Short grammar of Tiefo-N of Nyafogo (Gur, Burkina Faso)

Jeffrey Heath (University of Michigan)
Aminata Ouattara (Université d’Ouagadougou)
Abbie Hantgan (School of African and Oriental Studies)

Language Description Heritage Library (online)
with backup copy at Deep Blue (University of Michigan)

2017

Heath contact: schweinehaxen@hotmail.com

color code:
dark red: regular transcriptions for Tiefo-N
blue: regular transcriptions for Tiefo-D, including < Winkelman
green: not italic, in […] : phonetic transcriptions (IPA)
not italic, in /…/ : pre-surface representations
not italic, after * : reconstructions
italic: regular transcriptions for other languages
## Contents

1 Introduction
   1.1 Language background
   1.1.1 Our languages
   1.1.2 The Tiefo (cèfè) languages
   1.1.3 Tiefo villages
   1.1.4 Neighboring languages
   1.2 Environment
   1.3 History
   1.4 Previous scholarship on Tiefo
   1.5 Our fieldwork on Tiefo-N
   1.6 Acknowledgements

2 Phonology
   2.1 Consonants
   2.2 Vowels
      2.2.1 Vowel length and prolongation
      2.2.2 Oral vowels
      2.2.3 Nasal vowels
      2.2.4 Vowel sequences
      2.2.5 Cya versus C(y)a etc.
   2.3 Syllables
   2.4 Correspondences between Tiefo-N and -D
   2.5 Tones: Inventory and transcription
   2.6 Phonological processes
      2.6.1 Affrication and palatalization
      2.6.2 Reduction of vowel to schwa
      2.6.3 Syncope
      2.6.4 Secondary formation of labial velars from /kw gw nyw/
      2.6.5 Intervocalic liquid-deletion
      2.6.6 r/l alternations
      2.6.7 g/ŋ and g/y/y alternations and g/ŋ-deletion
      2.6.8 n/r alternations
      2.6.9 Denasalization
   2.7 Tonology
2.7.1 Tonal melodies of nouns .......................................................... 18
2.7.2 Tonal and segmental ablaut in verbs ........................................ 21
2.7.3 Tone sandhi processes ............................................................ 22
  2.7.3.1 LH#H-to-LL#H and LH#L-to-LL#H .................................. 22
  2.7.3.2 HM#(H)-to-H#(‘ H) .......................................................... 22
  2.7.3.3 <LH>-to-H ................................................................. 22
  2.7.3.4 Tone-dropping after possessive dí .................................... 23

3 Nouns, pronouns, and nominal modifiers ..................................... 24
  3.1 Nouns .................................................................................. 24
    3.1.1 Noun classes .................................................................... 24
      3.1.1.1 O-class nouns ............................................................ 24
      3.1.1.2 A-class nouns ............................................................ 25
      3.1.1.3 E-class nouns ............................................................ 27
      3.1.1.4 Class changes from singular to plural ......................... 28
      3.1.1.5 ‘Person’ (à m3o) and suppletive plurals (ō ná-wò, ə dyó→) ... 29
      3.1.2 Nominal plurals ............................................................. 29
      3.1.3 Deverbal agentives (-wì) ................................................ 31
      3.1.4 Infinitive (ná) ................................................................. 32
  3.2 Pronouns ............................................................................. 33
    3.2.1 Independent and proclitic pronouns .................................. 33
    3.2.2 Object enclitics ............................................................... 34
  3.3 Adjectives .......................................................................... 36
  3.4 Numerals ........................................................................... 40
    3.4.1 ‘1’ .............................................................................. 40
    3.4.2 ‘2’ to ‘9’ ...................................................................... 40
    3.4.3 ‘10’ to ‘100’ ................................................................. 41
    3.4.4 ‘Thousand’ and ‘million’ ............................................... 41
    3.4.5 Ordinals ...................................................................... 42

4 Nominal compounds .................................................................... 43
  4.1 Ordinary compounds ............................................................. 43
  4.2 Possessive-type compounds .................................................. 45
    4.2.1 ‘X’s Y’ ....................................................................... 45
    4.2.2 ‘Owner of Y’ (-wì) ......................................................... 45
    4.2.3 Compound agentives (-wì) ............................................ 45
  4.3 Bahuvrihi compounds ........................................................... 46
  4.4 Diminutives ...................................................................... 46

5 Noun phrase (NP) ..................................................................... 48
  5.1 Order of elements within an NP ........................................... 48
5.2 Vocalic prefix before noun ............................................................................. 48
5.3 Noun and adjective ....................................................................................... 51
5.4 Demonstratives .............................................................................................. 53
  5.4.1 Deictic ‘this, that’ (ŋỳìììì, ŋààààa) ................................................................. 53
  5.4.2 Discourse-definite ‘that’ (bèèèè) ................................................................. 53
  5.4.3 Demonstrative adverbs ............................................................................ 54
5.5 Possession ...................................................................................................... 54
5.6 Quantification (‘all’, ‘many/much’, ‘few/little’) ........................................ 55
5.7 Specific indefinite dìù ~ dì ‘a certain’ and plural dìò ~ dìè .................................. 56

6 NP coordination ............................................................................................... 58
  6.1 ‘X and/with Y’ (nà) ...................................................................................... 58
  6.2 ‘X or Y’ (tà) .................................................................................................. 58

7 Adpositions ....................................................................................................... 59
  7.1 Dative and benefactive ............................................................................... 59
  7.1.1 Indirect object with ditransitive verb ........................................................ 59
  7.1.2 Benefactive objects (bààààà, ŋỳììììì) .......................................................... 59
  7.2 Instrumental or comitative (nà) .................................................................. 60
  7.2.1 Simple instrumental/comitative phrases .................................................. 60
  7.2.2 ‘Bring’ and ‘take (there)’ ........................................................................... 60
  7.3 Spatial postpositions ................................................................................... 61
  7.3.1 Primary locative postpositions (tòììì and wùríéé) ....................................... 61
  7.3.2 Other spatial postpositions ...................................................................... 61
  7.3.3 Absence of overt locative postposition .................................................... 62
  7.4 Goal and cause ........................................................................................... 62
  7.5 Possession and desire .................................................................................. 63

8 Verb morphology ............................................................................................. 64
  8.1 Imperfective and perfective stems ............................................................... 64
  8.2 Verbs with identical imperfective and perfective stems ............................... 64
  8.3 bà and bé ‘come’ ......................................................................................... 66
  8.4 Imperfective and perfective differ by tone only ........................................... 66
  8.5 Imperfective and perfective differ by vocalic ablaut (at least) ...................... 68
  8.5.1 Perfective with final e/e ............................................................................. 69
  8.5.2 Perfective with final a ............................................................................... 72
  8.5.3 Perfective with final ə .............................................................................. 74
  8.6 Verbs with a perfective suffix ...................................................................... 75
  8.6.1 Perfective -là ~ -rà or -nà ................................................................. 75
    8.6.1.1 -là ~ -rà after unasalized stem ............................................................ 75
    8.6.1.2 Perfective -nà after nasalized stem .................................................... 77

iii
8.6.2 Verbs with apparently truncated imperfectives

8.6.2.1 *fyáⁿ*/*fyénê* ‘lie down’

8.6.2.2 *sɔⁿ*/*sűnê* ~ *sûnâ* ‘work’

8.6.2.3 *tǔ*/*tûlê* ‘spit’

8.6.2.4 *nɔrɔⁿ* ~ *nɔyⁿ*/*nɔnɔⁿ* ~ *nɔrɔⁿ* ‘expel’

8.6.3 Perfective -*bà* or -*mà*

8.6.3.1 Perfective -*bà* after unasalized stem

8.6.3.2 Perfective -*mà* after nasalized stem

8.7 Suppletion (*jà*/*dê* ‘happen’) 

9 Phrase-level verbal inflection

9.1 Perfective

9.1.1 Perfective positive

9.1.2 Perfective negative

9.2 Imperfective

9.2.1 Simple imperfective

9.2.2 Imperfective negative (*màⁿ*

9.3 Progressive

9.3.1 Progressive positive

9.3.2 Progressive negative

9.3.3 Past progressive

9.4 Future

9.4.1 Future positive

9.4.2 Future negative

9.5 Imperative

9.5.1 Imperative positive

9.5.2 Imperative negative (prohibitive) 

9.6 Hortative

9.6.1 Positive hortative (*é bi* 

9.6.2 Negative hortative (*è bàá*)

10 Simple clauses

10.1 Intransitive, transitive, ditransitive

10.1.1 Order of constituents

10.1.2 Intransitive verbs

10.1.2.1 Dynamic (active) intransitives

10.1.2.2 Stative intransitives

10.1.2.3 Adjectival predicates

10.1.3 Transitive verbs

10.1.4 Ambi-valent (labile) verbs
11 Focalization.................................................................112
  11.1 Focalization of a constituent in an indicative clause (lè – nè) ........112
  11.1.1 Subject focalization ..............................................112
  11.1.2 Focalized object ..................................................112
  11.1.3 Focalized adverb ..................................................113
  11.2 Interrogatives .......................................................114
  11.2.1 Polar (yes/no) interrogative (wà) ............................114
  11.2.2 Content interrogatives ...........................................114
    11.2.2.1 ‘Who?’ (jàrò) ..............................................114
    11.2.2.2 ‘What?’ (biè) ............................................115
    11.2.2.3 ‘Where?’ (sè, jà-tàìáyì) ................................115
    11.2.2.4 ‘When?’ (jà-sì-ñà, jà-sí) ................................116
    11.2.2.5 ‘How?’ (mà’kà) ............................................117
    11.2.2.6 ‘How much/many?’ (jè) ..................................117
    11.2.2.7 ‘Which?’ (jinấñá) ........................................117

12 Relativization..............................................................118
  12.1 Relativization of a constituent in a clause ..................................118
  12.1.1 Subject relatives ..................................................118
  12.1.2 Object relatives ...................................................119
    12.1.2.1 Ordinary object relatives ................................119
    12.1.2.2 Instrumental (function-specifying) relatives (dò) ......119
  12.1.3 Possessor relative ................................................120
12.1.4 Adpositional complement relative ........................................... 120

13 Multi-verb constructions ............................................................. 122
13.1 Tight and loose verb-verb combinations ........................................ 122
13.1.1 Tight (inseparable) verb-verb compounds .................................. 122
13.2 Same-subject constructions ....................................................... 124
13.2.1 ‘Be able to’ (pàrùn ~ pànyù) ................................................. 124
13.2.2 Infinitival constructions .......................................................... 125
13.2.2.1 Event sequences ............................................................ 125
13.2.2.2 Simultaneous co-events ................................................... 126
13.2.2.3 ‘Prevent’ (yàyà) plus infinitive ....................................... 127
13.2.3 ‘Begin’ plus complement ........................................................ 127
13.3 Different-subject constructions .................................................... 128
13.3.1 Different-subject event sequences ........................................... 128
13.3.2 Periphric causatives with jàyà ‘put’ ....................................... 128
13.3.3 Possible different-subject verb-verb compounds ......................... 129
13.4 Temporal adverbial clauses ....................................................... 130
13.4.1 ‘While’ background clauses .................................................. 130
13.4.2 Imperfective complement of perception verbs ......................... 130
13.5 Purposive clauses ........................................................................ 131
13.6 Conditional construction ............................................................ 131
13.6.1 Hypothetical (future) conditional .......................................... 132
13.6.2 Counterfactual ....................................................................... 132
13.6.3 ‘Even if’ ............................................................................... 133
13.7 ‘That’ complementizers with ‘know’, ‘see’, ‘hear’, and ‘say’ (tà, dè) ........ 133

14 Anaphora ......................................................................................... 135
14.1 Reflexive ...................................................................................... 135
14.2 Reciprocal ................................................................................... 136
14.3 Third-person logophoric ............................................................. 136

15 Discourse markers and greetings ..................................................... 138
15.1 Discourse markers ...................................................................... 138
15.1.1 Topicalization (kànní) ............................................................ 138
15.1.2 ‘X too’ (gó) ............................................................................ 138
15.1.3 ‘Self’ (yèrè) .......................................................................... 138
15.1.4 ‘Even’ (hàlì) .......................................................................... 139
15.1.5 ‘Only’ (mìèn) ....................................................................... 139
15.1.6 ‘But’ (absent) ......................................................................... 139
15.2 Greetings ..................................................................................... 140
References cited..............................................................................................................141

Abbreviations and symbols ..........................................................................................142
  Abbreviations .............................................................................................................. 142
  Symbols ...................................................................................................................... 143

Indices ............................................................................................................................144
  1. selected morphemes ............................................................................................ 144
  2. grammatical terms ............................................................................................... 146
1 Introduction

1.1 Language background

1.1.1 Gur languages

Gur (in French usually voltaïque) is a large family, consisting of approximately 50 languages. Dense concentrations of these languages are in SW Burkina and in adjacent parts of neighboring countries. The major city in SW Burkina is Bobo Dioulasso; other cities are Banfora, Diébougou, Gaoua, and Sindou. Large swaths of northern Burkina are occupied by the Gur languages Mooré and Gourmantche. The family extends across northern Ghana to Togo, Benin, and western Nigeria. Gur is thought to be most closely related to the Senoufo languages, which straddle the border area between Mali, Burkina, and Côte d’Ivoire. Together, they are thought to be part of the vast Niger-Congo superfamily which also includes Kwa, Kru, Bantoid, Bantu, Dogon, Ijoid, and (according to some) Mande and Atlantic.

The linguistic geography and the substantial differences among neighboring Gur languages suggest that SW Burkina might be part of the original homeland of Gur languages. However, SW Burkina is now also home to several Mande languages, which likely spread into the area more recently.

Jula (Dioula) in particular has become the dominant lingua franca of SW Burkina, and it and closely related varieties, such as Bambara, are lingue franche in neighboring Mali and northern Côte d’Ivoire. The non-Jula languages of SW Burkina are at various stages of endangerment due to the Jula juggernaut. In the case of Tiefo, the process of Jula-ization dates from the end of the 19th Century. The result is that all Tiefo varieties are now threatened with extinction. For fuller discussion of current Tiefo sociolinguistics, see Hantgan (in press).

1.1.2 The Tiefo (cêfɔ) languages

We distinguish two languages, Tiefo-N treated in this document, spoken in Niafogo and with dialectal differences until recently in Noumoudara, and Tiefo-D, spoken in Daramandougou. The distinction (using different labels) was established by Winkelmann (1998), who studied Tiefo-D in some detail.
Neither Manessy (1981, 1982) nor Naden (1989) was able to place Tiefo (then treated as a single language) within the main genetic subgroups of Gur. Naden includes Tiefo, Viemo, Toussian, Wara, and Natioro in a loose category of SW Burkina languages whose genetic subgrouping within “Central Gur” is “improbable” (p. 149). Naden does not address the issue whether this set of languages might itself constitute a genetic subgroup, or is just a basket of languages awaiting classification. We therefore tentatively assume that Tiefo constitutes its own peripheral subgroup of Gur.

The ethnic name in Nyafogo is cɛ̀fɔ́ ‘Tiefo (person)’, plural cɛ̀fɔ́ː, and ‘Tiefo language’ is the compound cɛ̀fɔ́-mìì (or cɛ̀fɔ́-miyì).

1.1.3 Tiefo villages

The Tiefo villages with their Tiefo-N names are in (1). In náyáfɔ́yɔ́ →, náyáfɔ́yɔ́ː etc., the form following □ is plural.

(1) Names of Tiefo villages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>official name</th>
<th>village</th>
<th>people</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. Tiefo-N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyafogo</td>
<td>náyáfɔ́yɔ́ː</td>
<td>náyáfɔ́yɔ́ː \ náyáfɔ́yɔ́ː →</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noumoudara</td>
<td>tɔ́ráyɔ́</td>
<td>tɔ́ráyɔ́ \ tɔ́ráyɔ́ →</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Tiefo-D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daramandougou</td>
<td>káyá(-lè)</td>
<td>káyá \ káyà →</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. formerly Tiefo-speaking, on the plateau above and west of the cliffs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td>mèé</td>
<td>mà́yà \ mà́yà →</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maturku</td>
<td>mà́tɔ́dò ~ mà́tyòò</td>
<td>mà́t(y)ɔ́dò \ mà́t(y)ɔ́dò →</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samogan</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tien</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kodala</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
d. formerly Tiefo-speaking, in the plains below and east of the cliffs

Koumandara  \( \text{\textipa{fi\text{-}y\text{é}-n}} \) \( \text{\textipa{fi\text{-}y\text{é}-n}} \) \( \text{\textipa{fi\text{-}y\text{é}-n}} \) \( \text{\textipa{by-\text{-}n}} \)  
Dege-dege  \( \text{\textipa{d\text{-}e\text{-}g\text{-}e\text{-}g\text{-}e}} \) \( \text{\textipa{d\text{-}e\text{-}g\text{-}e\text{-}g\text{-}e-n\text{-}n}} \) \( \text{\textipa{by-\text{-}n}} \)  
Derege  \( \text{\textipa{d\text{-}e\text{-}r\text{-}g\text{b\text{-}e}} \) \( \text{\textipa{d\text{-}e\text{-}r\text{-}g\text{b\text{-}e}}} \) \( \text{\textipa{by-\text{-}b\text{-}e}} \)  
Laranfiera  \( \text{\textipa{la\text{-}y\text{á}\text{-}f\text{-}y\text{é}-l\text{á}} \) \( \text{\textipa{la\text{-}y\text{á}\text{-}f\text{-}y\text{é}}} \) \( \text{\textipa{by-\text{-}b\text{-}e}} \)  
Musubadugu  \( \text{\textipa{f\text{-}k\text{-}i\text{-}y\text{á}}\text{-\text{á}}} \)  
Sidéradougou  \( \text{\textipa{f\text{-}k\text{-}i\text{-}y\text{á}}\text{-\text{á}}} \)  (partially Tiefo)

Despite its name and geographical proximity, Tiéfora village on the highway from Banfora to Gaouwa is of Karaboro (subgroup of Senoufo) rather than Tiefo ethnicity (and language), as Winkelmann already observed.

The Tiefo-N name for Bobo Dioulasso, the biggest city in the zone, is \( \text{\textipa{s\text{-}m\text{-}i\text{-}y\text{á}}\text{-\text{á}}} \).

Our GPS coordinates for the main villages follow. The \textit{quartiers} of Daramandougou are separated from each other by several kilometers. Coordinates are in degrees (north latitude, west longitude), minutes, and decimal fractions of minutes.

(2)  

a. Tiefo-N  
Nyafogo  10 53.203  04 22.725  
Noumoudara  10 58.936  04 25.375  

b. Tiefo-D (\textit{quartiers} of Daramandougou)  
Sounougu  10 49.745  04 30.982  
Santoko  10 50.005  04 32.013  
Flaso  10 49.245  04 32.544  
Jinejan  10 49.267  04 33.648  
Biton  10 48.707  04 31.190  
Bofoboso  10 49.426  04 30.997  
Masaso  10 50.200  04 32.594

Winkelmann’s map (1998: 17) may be consulted for further detail.

The people of Nyafogo participate in a five-day market cycle that defines their traditional “week”. The sequence is Pêni, Nyafogo, Bobo Dioulasso, Dar Salami, and Noumoudara. All but Nyafogo are on the Bobo to Banfora highway on the plateau above and just west of the cliffs.

While Nyafogo is oriented to the west and north, Daramandougou is oriented toward the south. The only local market they participate in is that of Tiéfora, and the large city they are oriented toward is Banfora rather than Bobo. Therefore even today Nyafogo and Daramandougou have relatively little contact with each other, despite their physical proximity. The \textit{pistes} between Nyafogo and Daramandougou are very poor and are used
mainly by motorcycles and the odd lumbering, overloaded market-day van. Our 4x4 made the trip from Nyafogo to the center of Daramandougou in about 1.5 hours.

1.1.4 Neighboring languages

Besides Jula, the dominant lingua franca which is eating up the native languages of the zone, neighboring languages are the following:

- to the NW on the plateau: Northern Toussian (peripheral Gur)
- to the north: Bobo (Mande)
- farther to the NE: Viemo (peripheral Gur)
- to the south: Eastern Karaboro (Senoufo)
- to the SE (beginning with Sidéréadougou): Dogosé (Gur)

Nyafogo and the other predominantly Tiefo villages also host minorities speaking the Mande languages Bobo and Seenku (aka Sembla, Seeku), and the Gur languages Moore (ethnicity Mossi) and Turka. There are small groups of Fulbe cattle herders in the bush near Nyafogo. Fulbe women come into the villages to sell milk and butter. Jula is the lingua franca for nearly all interethnic communication.

1.2 Environment

There is a heavy rainy season May to September, followed by a long dry season from October to April.

The cliffs that run just east of and parallel to the Bobo-Banfora highway define the geography. The cliffs range from high and steep to lower and more gentle, and there are two passes north of Nyafogo where a 4x4 or a motorcycle can navigate the slopes going up or down. Daramandougou is cut off by particularly steep cliffs and it is too far from the passes to make much use of them.

The “plateau” west of the cliffs can therefore be distinguished from the “plains” to their east. The Bobo to Banfora highway and villages including Noumoudara are up on the plateau, while both Nyafogo and Daramandougou are down in the plains. In Tiefo-N, pêtêë³t³n denotes the plains, and jáá-ʃiⁿ the plateau.

Both on the plateau and in the plains, the main crops cultivated are maize (the staple grain) and cotton (the main cash crop), followed by sorghum, sesame, peanut, okra, cowpea (Vigna unguiculata), and roselle (Hibiscus sabdariffa). During the dry season, some vegetable gardening is practiced: onion, garlic, lettuce, tomato, chili pepper, sweet potato, and cassava.
1.3 History

The Tiefo were a locally formidable military power until the late 19th Century. There exists to this day a small military museum in Noumoudara, the former center of Tiefo power, where visitors are shown weapons and torture instruments. This village still boasts a “war chief” in addition to an administrative chief.

The key event in the history of the Tiefo was the invasion led by the Jula chief Samori Touré in 1897. Some Tiefo on the plateau were massacred (Hébert 1958; Winkelmann 1995, 1996). This led to the rapid linguistic Jula-ization of Tiefo country. The remaining vestiges of Tiefo languages occur in Nyafogo (Tiefo-N) and Daramandougou (Tiefo-D) on the plains below and east of the cliffs, which were spared the worst of the massacres.

1.4 Previous scholarship on Tiefo

Gabriel Manessy, the leading comparative Gur scholar of the early 1980’s, feared even then that Tiefo (not then subdivided) was dead: “Le tyefo est selon toute apparence une langue en voie d’extinction, peut-être éteinte aujourd’hui” (Manessy 1982: 143). He lamented the sad state of its documentation, which at that time consisted of one manuscript (not available to us) by R. P. André Prost with 140 words and 80 short sentences collected, as Manessy put it, “dans des conditions difficiles auprès d’un vieillard édenté, par l’intermédiaire d’un interprète qui parlait le dyula, mais non le tyéfo” (1982: 143). Manessy was nonetheless able to confirm that Tiefo belonged to Gur by lexical comparisons.

Fortunately, Tiefo (like Mark Twain) outlived its obituary. The first major work on a Tiefo language was Kerstin Winkelmann’s important dissertation on Tiefo-D (Winkelmann 1996). She was part of a German research group that worked on Gur languages of SW Burkina. They that had a special interest in class markers in nouns (Miehe et al. eds. 2012), which are important in wider Niger-Congo studies.

Winkelmann’s fieldwork was done in the period 1990-1994, more than twenty years ago. She focused heavily on Tiefo-D in Daramandougou, but she also made short visits to Noumoudara and Nyafogo. She gathered enough Tiefo-N material to conclude (correctly) that it was a different language from, and mutually unintelligible with, Tiefo-D. However, she also concluded (incorrectly) that Tiefo-N was already then beyond salvation, especially in Nyafogo. She found it impossible to elicit Tiefo-N noun plurals (“die von den Informanten nicht gebildet werden konnten”) or more than very few forms (“nur sehr wenige Formen”) from verb paradigms. She therefore described the informants as “Semisprecher” (Winkelmann 1995:3,14).

Winkelmann’s dissertation (1998) consists of a grammar (pp. 1-215) focusing on phonology and basic morphology of Tiefo-D, a Tiefo-D/German lexicon (pp. 216-249) with
some comparisons to Tiefo-N, and a reverse German-Tiefo-D index (pp. 250-259). This work is cited henceforth as W98. Winkelmann has since changed careers.

An SIL sociolinguistic survey (Berthelette & Berthelette 2001) based on interviews in Daramandougou and briefly in Noumoudara, gave an overly optimistic picture of the vitality of Tiefo-D, confirmed that Tiefo-N of Noumoudara was down to a few old people, and did not report any signs of linguistic life at Nyafogo.

Tiefo studies reached their low point in 2008, when the Endangered Languages Documentation Project at SOAS funded a Burkina scholar to the tune of £6000 to do fieldwork on Tiefo. The individual in question produced no documents, deposited no data, and his current whereabouts are not known to our sources in the Burkina linguistic community.

1.5 Our fieldwork on Tiefo-N

The project Heath has led since 2005 on Dogon and other languages and with which Hantgan was affiliated made a “strategic withdrawal” to the safe haven of Bobo Dioulasso during the Tuareg rebellion of 2012 in Mali. In SW Burkina, we not only continued our ongoing work with Malian informants who traveled with us, we also began sniffing around for possible local fieldwork opportunities. In this context we took a chance and checked out the Tiefo situation.

Hantgan and Heath had the good fortune to encounter Ouattara, a linguistics student at the University of Ouagadougou and an ethnic Tiefo (but not a native speaker) who was interested in documenting Tiefo-N in particular. It turned out, to our pleasant surprise, that not only was Tiefo-D still somewhat viable (being used within a large extended family in Daramandougou), but there were also a couple of elderly people in Nyafogo who could still serve as Tiefo-N informants. We did, however, confirm that the Tiefo-N variety of Noumoudara was extinct and unrecoverable.

Based on our initial division of labor, Heath elicited the flora-fauna terminology for Tiefo-N (as he did for several other SW Burkina languages) and did most of the species identifications; Hantgan (who can communicate in Jula) began informant work with the Nyafogo speakers (mostly at our base in Bobo); and the project supported Ouattara’s studies in Ouagadougou and brief field trips by her to Nyafogo.

Completion of the fieldwork was delayed by Ouattara’s family obligations, which led her to take an NGO job in northern Burkina in 2013-’14, and by Hantgan’s departure in January 2014 to a new postdoc position at SOAS involving fieldwork in Senegal. Hantgan left behind materials for a Tiefo-N dictionary and grammar (2013ms, 2014ms) but no finished works.

After Ouattara returned to her linguistic studies in 2015, Heath was able to reunite with her and carry out joint fieldwork. They spent a few days in Nyafogo during Heath’s Christmas break in January 2016. They then brought the two elderly speakers to the project’s
Bobo base for intensive joint fieldwork totalling 5-6 weeks in August and again in October 2016. During this time they went over Hantgan’s manuscripts to glean items, especially lexical, that were not already in their own materials.

This English-language document was written by Heath. Most of the Tiefo-N data in it was collected in joint elicitation sessions including Heath and Ouattara, though it builds on earlier work by Hantgan. During these sessions, Ouattara played a crucial role in clarifying morphosyntax, lexical semantics, and tones. Heath is responsible for errors and mistranscriptions. We are disseminating this work now in order to make our results available in a timely fashion. Ouattara will continue to work on Tiefo-N independently and her dissertation and other works (in French) may supercede this document in part. She has been transcribing texts as well as adding to her grammatical and lexical materials, and we plan to disseminate the texts when ready.

The fieldwork has required considerable patience on all of our parts, given the age of our speakers and the fact that their only other language is Jula. Nevertheless, thanks to their enthusiasm, Hantgan’s willingness to undertake a demanding fieldwork task, and Ouattara’s perseverance, we have been able to put together a basic grammar and a substantial lexical spreadsheet for Tiefo-N that would (we like to think) have pleased and surprised Manessy and Winkelmann.

1.6 Acknowledgements

Heath, Hantgan, and Ouattara gratefully acknowledge funding from the National Science Foundation (USA.), Documenting Endangered Languages (DEL) program, especially BCS-1263150 (2013-17). Heath also acknowledges support from the University of Michigan, Dept. of Linguistics and African Studies Center.

Our primary informants, thought to be the last fluent speakers of Tiefo-N, have been Mr. Assory Ouattara (born 1947) and Mrs. Dongui Ouattara (born 1936).

We thank the people of Tiefo villages, especially our host Lameen Ouattara, himself a fair Tiefo-N speaker who also assisted the older speakers in the Nyafogo field sessions. We also have fond memories for the hospitality afforded us in Noumoudara and Daramandougou. We hope to return to Daramandougou to work on Tiefo-D.
2 Phonology

2.1 Consonants

The inventory is (3), in IPA.

(3) IPA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stops/Affricates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t̃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dʒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ɡ̊</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricatives/Approximants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiceless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal Stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ̃</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r, rⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glides (Semivowels)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w, wⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j, jⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comments:

- r (tap) occurs only intervocically (VrV, CArV, VCrV);
- intervocalic n is optionally realized as tap r plus vocalic nasalization (§2.6.8);
- /g/ between two a or ɔ vowels spirantizes to γ especially in #C_v_v position (second syllable onset) in a stem (§2.6.7);
- /g/ sometimes varies with ŋ in a nasalized environment (§2.6.7);
- in nouns, pharyngeal ʃ is common intervocally at the onset of third and fourth syllables from the left, and is arguably a positional allophone of γ;
- glottal stop ʔ occurs word-finally as a negative enclitic on verbs.
- labial velars (ʃp, ɡb, ŋm) occur stem-initially, and in a few cases are synchronically derivable from /kw/ etc. (§2.6.4).

This grammar uses the practical orthography in (4). The consonants for which non-IPA symbols are used are preceded by →. Ligatures are omitted for labial velars. Note especially y = IPA [j] and j = IPA [dʒ].

8
Orthography

- **stops/affricates**
  - voiceless: p, t → c, k → kp
  - voiced: b, d → j, g → gb

- **fricatives/approximants**
  - voiceless: f, s
  - voiced: y, ʕ

- **nasal stops**
  - m, n, ŋ, ŋ → ñm

- **lateral**
  - l

- **tap**
  - → r

- **glides (semivowels)**
  - w, wⁿ → y, yⁿ

- **glottal**
  - ?, h

The three authors have at times differed in their interpretations of laryngeal and pharyngeal consonants. Heath’s practice, followed here, is to recognize glottal stop ? only in clause-final negative enclitic =ʔ, and does not recognize h except word-initially in a few borrowings like hákírī ‘intelligence’ (< Jula). Hantgan has transcribed medial glottal stop, and Ouattara has transcribed medial glottal stop and h, in a number of words, arguably to mark a weak syllabic boundary between vowels.

Heath considers velar fricative y and pharyngeal approximant ʕ to be in partial but not complete complementary distribution, with ʕ typically in third and later syllables from the left (very common in A-class CvCv{v} nouns) and y typically medial in Cv{v}. He transcribes y when he hears actual frication as opposed to pharyngeal narrowing; if the complementarity hypothesis is correct it means that in third and later syllables the frication is relaxed and replaced by pharyngealization, which is partially diffused into the flanking vowels. Both y and ʕ are strongly associated with a,a and æ,œ frames. However, some high frequency CvCv words appear to have ʕ instead of y, as with postposition bāi‘ ‘having’ versus postposition bāyà ‘wanting’ (§10.2.5.1, §10.3.2), yaï’ ‘1Pl inclusive’ (§3.2.1), and kāî ‘A-class 3Sg pronoun in some predicate types (§3.3, §9.4.1). Hantgan’s ʕ generally corresponds to both Heath’s ʕ and y.

Some consonants reconstructed for Proto-Gur (Naden 1989) are absent from Tiefo-N. These are *v and voiced implosives *{ɓ ɗ ʄ}. 
2.2 Vowels

2.2.1 Vowel length and prolongation

Vowel length is phonemic in all positions in a word. Cvv is distinct from Cv, CvCvv is distinct from CvCv, etc.

In addition, Tiefo-N uses intonation-like prolongation as the productive pluralization of nouns. Even already long vowels can be prolonged, as with wū ‘house’, plural wū→. In cases like this, the prolongation may include a quasi-syllable break, as in [wū.ū→] ~ [wū-wū→].

2.2.2 Oral vowels

Like other languages of the zone, Tiefo-N has seven vowel qualities. The ATR opposition is limited to mid-height. The vowel qualities in (5) have phonemically distinct short and long forms.

(5) high
    mid +ATR
    mid -ATR
    low
     i
     e
     o
     e
     o
     a

High vowels are ATR-neutral and may combine with either +ATR or -ATR vowels within a stem. Proto-Gur is reconstructed with ±ATR extended to high and low vowels (Rennison 1992). Winkelmann (1998: 35-37) astutely identifies vestiges of *a (-ATR) versus *ʌ (+ATR) in Tiefo-D imperfective/perfective alternations, which for some Ca verbs are e/a and for others are e/a. One of the e/a cases is Tiefo-D bē\bà ‘come’; see the discussion of irregular Tiefo-N bà and bè in §8.3 below. The abundant Tiefo-N alternations involving imperfective a and (as a lexical choice) perfective e or e are also relevant; see the lists of verb alternations in (91-93) in §8.5.1 below. If we assume stem-internal ATR harmony, following the same logic we might internally reconstruct possible original ATR oppositions for high vowels. Verbs like dūgā ‘become heavy’ and fírá ‘(day) break’ might be reconstructed as +ATR *CuCa and *CiCa on the basis of perfectives dūgè and fírè, while other verbs like tūrè ‘(burned skin) peel off’ and jīnà ‘kick’ might be internally reconstructed as -ATR *CtCa and and *CiCa based on perfective tūrè and jīnè.

The sequence /eo/, which occurs in combinations of a verb ending in e plus an encliticized object pronoun =ò or nominal prefix ò, is sometimes pronounced [œ] with a front rounded articulation.
2.2.3 Nasal vowels

Nasalization is indicated by superscript ⁿ after the vowel. Mid vowels can be nasalized only if -ATR (ɛⁿ or ɔⁿ).

(7) Nasalized vowels

\[ iⁿ \quad uⁿ \quad ɛⁿ \quad ɔⁿ \quad aⁿ \]

Many bisyllabic and longer nouns show stem-wide nasalization of vowels. The noun \( \text{diyāṭāⁿ} \) ‘fire’ (also ‘gun’) is heard as \([\text{diy}ⁿ\text{āṭāⁿ}]\) with all vowels and semivowels nasalized. We hesitate between phonological transcription \( \text{diyāṭāⁿ} \) and one with more explicit nonterminal nasalization, e.g. \( \text{diy}ⁿ\text{āṭāⁿ} \) or even \( \text{diy}ⁿ\text{y}ⁿ\text{āṭāⁿ} \). In the former case, we can either take the transcription as underlying and assume regressive nasalization, or treat the final ⁿ diacritic as implying stem-wide nasalization. In \( \text{sə́ɛ́ɛ́ⁿ} \) ‘work (n)’, nasalization peaks early in the long syllable, apparently attracted by the more conducive ɔ vocalism. An important morphophonological process in nominal plurals is denasalization of at least the end of an otherwise nasalized stem (§3.1.2).

2.2.4 Vowel sequences

In addition to combinations of vowels with peripheral glides (Cyo, Coy, etc.), there are some cases of C₂ɛ that have a partially desyllabified mid-height vowel. Words like this with a final y, which we write as C₂y, could alternatively be analysed as /Coy/, with labialization decreasing during the syllabic nucleus.

2.2.5 Cya versus Ci(y)a etc.

Distinctions of this type can be difficult to hear. Cases in question include perfective forms of certain Cv verbs. We transcribe \( \text{fyāⁿ} \) ‘(seed) germinate’ and \( \text{fwā} \) ‘say’, but \( \text{diyā} \) ‘do’ and \( \text{duwāⁿ} \) ‘bite’ (variant); see (94b,e) in §8.5.2. The latter could also be transcribed \( \text{dià} \) and \( \text{duàⁿ} \),
as they have no conspicuous semivowel linkers. The distinction between Cya and Ci(y)a is based on whether we hear the initial y/i element as syllabic.

2.3 Syllables

Syllables are Cv, Cvv, , Cvw (or Cvwⁿ), Cv(y) (or Cv(y)ⁿ), Cvŋ, and Cvν, plus counterparts of any of these with initial CL (L = l w y) replacing simple C. While l may form part of a Cl cluster, tap r cannot form #Cr clusters. However, in Cvrv and longer stems, the first vowel is often reduced to a schwa before the tap r (§2.6.2). In all these formulae, vv represents a long vowel or tautosyllabic vowel sequence.

2.4 Correspondences between Tiefo-N and -D

Although the two languages have similar consonant and vowel inventories, and many cognates, the relationship between cognate words is often disguised by sound changes. W98 gives the examples in (8); we use blue for Tiefo-D. The Tiefo-N examples (mostly from Noumoudara) are shown here with the tone markings from W98 (except that M-tone is overtly marked). One important correspondence is Tiefo-D intervocalic glottal stop ʔ for Tiefo-N g. We note also c for s, and d for affricate j.

(8) gloss Tiefo-D (W98) Tiefo-N (W98)

'river' blâ?ā ~ blā bârágā ~ bálâgā
'household' drāⁿ dârágā
'hair' bâr(ʔā) bàgalē, bàrâl
'dog' būŋ bōⁿ, bōⁿ
'skin' cēʔē sērēgē
'urine' cicī sīsīū
'millet cake' cūrū sūrū
'sun(light)' dē jâgā, yēâ
'elder brother’ dē jē

2.5 Tones: Inventory and transcription

W98 reports three tone levels for Tiefo-D. Using a as the vowel, she transcribes á (high), a (mid), and à (low). We will use á, ā, and ă for Tiefo-D, even in citing data from Winkelmann, making the mid tone explicit. Tiefo-D has some atonal morphemes that really should be
transcribed without tonal diacritics in their lexical form to distinguish them from M-toned forms. Tiefo-N has no atonal morphemes.

Changing the color from blue (Tiefo-D) to dark red (Tiefo-N), we transcribe ā, ā, and à. This applies to our own data and to the occasional Tiefo-N datum cited from Winkelmann. Tiefo-N too has three tone levels, but they pattern differently. Whereas W98 reports many M-toned nouns for Tiefo-D, Tiefo-N has none (except in HM-toned stems). (9) shows two minimal trios reported by W98 (p. 71) for Tiefo-D, and gives their Tiefo-N counterparts in our transcription. Parenthesized Tiefo-N words are not cognate and should be disregarded here.

(9) Tiefo-D Tiefo-N

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a.</th>
<th>dé</th>
<th>‘body’</th>
<th>(kédì)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dē</td>
<td>‘brother’</td>
<td>dē ‘elder sibling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dè</td>
<td>‘field’</td>
<td>(fỳáỳá)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b.</th>
<th>só</th>
<th>‘pail’</th>
<th>sóọ́ọ́</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sō</td>
<td>‘pig’</td>
<td>só́y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sò</td>
<td>‘horse’</td>
<td>sóọ́ọ́</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In these and some other cases, Tiefo-D M-tone corresponds to rising tone (orthographic v or vv) in Tiefo-N. As this suggests, M-tone is not regular for monosyllabic nouns in Tiefo-N. For nouns, it occurs only as part of HM sequences. On the other hand, grammatical particles and verb forms may be M-toned.

Contoured tones within a syllable in Tiefo-N are limited to two falling contours (<HL> and <HM>), one rising contour <LH>, and (rarely) a bell-shaped contour <LHL>. Examples of all the Tiefo-N syllable tone possibilities using monosyllabic words are in (10).

(10) type example gloss

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a.</th>
<th>monotonal</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H wúú</td>
<td>‘death’ (compare wùú ‘house’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M gō</td>
<td>‘be (present)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L mèè</td>
<td>‘okra’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>b.</th>
<th>contoured</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bitonal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL yáá</td>
<td>‘co-wife’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HM bīⁿ</td>
<td>‘roof’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LH dèè</td>
<td>‘sauce’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.6 Phonological processes

2.6.1 Affrication and palatalization

As in Tiefo-D, there is partial (subphonemic) affrication of \textit{t} and \textit{d} before \textit{i} and \textit{y}. However, \textit{ti} remains distinct from \textit{ci}, and so forth. We will disregard subphonemic affrication in transcriptions.

2.6.2 Reduction of vowel to schwa

A short vowel is typically reduced in the direction of schwa, but not syncopated entirely, in the environment \textit{C_rv} with a tap \textit{r} and word-initial \textit{C}. These sequences typically surface as \textit{Crv} with a shortened but still audible schwa-like vowel. A full pronunciation with one of the regular short vowels is usually also possible.

An example with a verb stem is \textit{tə̀rə́rə́rə́} ‘ask (sb, to do sth)’; additional examples are in (91c) in §8.5.1.

2.6.3 Syncope

Historically, *Cvrv is the probable source for stems that are now Clv in Tiefo-N. In such cases there is no synchronic evidence for a /Cvlv/ underlying representation. An example is the verb \textit{klə́klə́} ‘clap (hands)’; for more examples see (91d) in §8.5.1. If this historical interpretation is correct, the difference between *Cvrv and *Cvlv is that the reduction of the first vowel is partial (to schwa) in the first case and total in the second. See the actual verb-stem alternations of the type \textit{Crv}/\textit{Clv} in §2.6.6 below. Bisyllabics like \textit{bləkə́bləkə́} ‘be cured’ may likewise derive from trisyllabic etyma via syncope before \textit{l}.

However, there is no fully productive synchronic rule of the type word-initial Cvlv → Clv. Counterexamples include \textit{wə́lə́wə́lə́} ‘flip, turn over (calabash)’ \textit{kə́lə́kə́lə́} ‘(baby) crawl’, and \textit{jə́lə́jə́lə́} ‘sleep (v)’. Nor is syncope required in the medial syllable of CvCvlv, as shown by numerous trisyllabic verbs like \textit{sə́yə́sə́lə́} ‘fear, be afraid’; see (92a) in §8.5.1.
2.6.4 Secondary formation of labial velars from /kw gw ŋw/

Two synchronically irregular perfective/imperfective alternations of the type ko/kp and ku/kp suggest a no longer productive process converting velar plus w (representing desyllabified o or u) into a labial velar: /kw/ → kp (11a). However, there are other cases of kw etc. that do not fuse into labial velars, as with k₃ⁿ|kwₐⁿ ‘understand’ (11b), compare kwɔ̄lɔ̀’  ‘good’ versus predicative kɔ̀ ‘be good’. Conversely, many stems have invariant labial velar {kp gb ŋm} that does not alternate with a Cw cluster (11c).

(11) imperfective perfective gloss

   a. kō kpà ‘hit’
      kú kpà ‘cut’

   b. k₃ⁿ kwèⁿ ‘understand’
      k₃̣ – kw₃ kā-bā ‘end, be used up’

   c. ŋmā ŋmè ‘(baby) suckle’
      gbā gbā ‘split (wood)’
      kpā kpā-lā ‘weep’

See W98: 62 for comparable cases in Tiefo-D, including two gu/gb alternations.

In these labial velars, the velar and labial articulations overlap and a click-like effect is produced by suction. There is no distinction between velar-labial consonant cluster sequences and labial velars, so we omit the ligature in transcriptions.

However, occasional fluctuation between co-articulated ŋm or gb and sequential gw or gw was observed in less common stems. For example, ‘sparrowhawk’ was heard both as gbéy with labial velar and as gwéy with stop-semivowel sequence.

2.6.5 Intervocalic liquid-deletion

Tap r is subject to sporadic deletion intervocically, resulting in vowel contraction (vrv → vv). There are some doublets with and without medial r in the vocabulary. The nominal plural by prolongation of the final vowel or sonorant likely originated as reduction of plural suffix *-rv (with echo vowel copied from the stem-final) and contraction, usually forming a pure long vowel. The rhotic suffix is well-preserved in Tiefo-D.

There are also some perfective/imperfective verb stem alternations in which one form lacks a medial r found in another form. The r-less form appears to “grow” a final y (12a). In a few cases it is l rather than r that drops (12b).
For cases where medial *r* is stable in a verb stem, see the following section.

In the case of *bóri*/*bí-lá* ‘ask’, if we take -*lá* as a perfective suffix (as with many other verbs), we have a further example of *r*-deletion.

### 2.6.6 *r/l* alternations

Some verbs show *r/l* alternations in their perfective/imperfective pairings (13a). Some of the alternations are of the form Cərv versus Clv, the latter likely syncopated from original *Cəlv*. Several other verbs have stable *l* (13b) or stable *r* (13c).
2.6.7 \( g/ŋ \) and \( g/ɣ \) alternations and \( g/ŋ \)-deletion

Intervocalic \( g \) may shift to \( ŋ \) in a nasalized environment.

(14) imperfective perfective gloss

\[ \text{sìgì}^n \sim \text{sìŋ} \quad \text{sìgì-mà} \quad \text{‘run’} \]

Voiced fricative \( ɣ \) (velar, approximately) patterns as a spirantized allophone of \( g \) between two \( a \) or \( ɔ \) vowels. The degree of frication (turbulence) is slight in any position (see below on further lenition to \( ʕ \)). Actual alternations occur in verb stems, correlating with vocalism (15a). The relationship between the two may be obscured by the independent alternation of \( g \) with \( ŋ \) (15b). For example the perfective of ‘pay’ likely derives from \( *\text{nìgē}^n \), compare the variants for ‘shout’ (15b).

(15) imperfective perfective gloss

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{a.} & \text{dỳỳ} & \text{dígè} & \text{‘follow; hear’} \\
        & \text{klàyà} & \text{klégè} & \text{‘become short(er)’} \\
        & \text{sàyá}^n & \text{sìgè}^n & \text{‘rub on, apply (oil to skin)’} \\
        & \text{sùgú} & \text{sàŋ} & \text{‘catch’} \\
        & \text{tígè}^n & \text{tígè}^n \sim \text{tíŋè} & \text{‘heat (sth)’} \\
\text{b.} & \text{nàyà}^n & \text{niŋè} & \text{‘pay (sb)’} \\
        & \text{fàyà}^n & \text{fìgè}^n \sim \text{fìŋè} & \text{‘shout’} \\
        & \text{tàyà}^n \sim \text{tígè}^n \sim \text{tíŋè} & \text{tíŋè} \sim \text{tàyà}^n & \text{‘ignite’} \\
\end{array}
\]

In ‘fall’ (16a) below, medial \( g \) appears to have disappeared entirely. The same is true of \( ŋ \) in (16b), but given the \( g/ŋ \) alternations we have seen, it may be that what was originally deleted was \( *g \) in \( *\text{sùgē}^n \) or \( *\text{sùgà}^n \). In neither of these cases was the \( *g \) in the vocalic environment that favored spirantization to \( ɣ \), so what actually happened diachronically is obscure.

(16) imperfective perfective gloss

\[
\begin{array}{lll}
\text{a.} & \text{sò} & \text{sùgà} & \text{‘fall’} \\
\text{b.} & \text{sà}^n & \text{sùnè} \sim \text{sùnà} & \text{‘work (v)’, cf. noun \( sə̆nè\)\textsuperscript{a}’} \\
\end{array}
\]

Tiefo-N has many nouns and adjectives with shapes like \( \text{CvCa}^a\text{a} \) and \( \text{CvCɔ}^\mathbf{ɔ} \), where \( ɣ \) is our effort to capture the similarity between a lenited \( *\gamma \) and the famous Arabic pharyngeal consonant. In this position, i.e. at the onset of the third or later syllable of a polysyllabic word,
Frication is inaudible, and the phonetic output is best described as having a long pharyngealized [aˤ] or [ɔˤ], i.e. as [CvCaˤː] or [CvCɔˤː]. The relationship between this and the glottal stop reported by W98 for Tiefo-D in similar positions is worth exploring.

2.6.8 n/r alternations

Intervocalic n optionally lenites slightly to a tap r, preserving nasality in (at least) the following vowel. Presumably the actual process is reduction of nasal stop n to nasalized tap rⁿ, followed by redistribution of the nasal feature. Examples involving aspect pairings for verbs are in (17). We noticed quite a few cases like these in our lexical work but did not collect them intensively.

(17) imperfective perfective gloss
a. nānà ~ nārana nēnē ~ nērana ‘make (sth); fix’
b. pīnà ~ pīrana pīnē ~ pīrēna ‘receive, accept’

2.6.9 Denasalization

This is a morphophonological process that is part of plural formation in nouns, along with prolongation of the final syllable. See §3.1.2 for discussion and examples.

2.7 Tonology

There are three tone levels: H, M, and L. We acknowledge that there are occasional differences in tone transcriptions among the three authors. After Hantgan’s departure, much of the lexicon including tone marking was reviewed by Ouattara on her own, and by Heath and Ouattara in joint sessions in which we attempted and in most cases reached consensus on tone. The tone markings here are Heath’s based on these joint sessions but have benefitted greatly from Ouattara’s input.

2.7.1 Tonal melodies of nouns

Slashes /.../ enclose lexical tone melodies. Monosyllabic Tiefo-N nouns may be /H/, /HL/, /HM/, and /LH/. Nonmonosyllables may be any of these, plus /HLH/, /LHL/, or /LHM/. There is no pure /M/ melody for noun stems.
The lexical melody is usually realized without change. However, tones of nouns are dropped to {L} after dí in possessive constructions (§2.7.3.4). Curly brackets {...} enclose grammatically conditioned (ablauted) tone overlays.

Since there is no distinction between /HL/ and /ML/ in nouns, an argument could be made that what we transcribe as /HL/ might alternatively be analysed as /ML/. However, HL and ML patterns are distinguishable in verbs, and we hear the relevant nouns as HL-toned.

Examples of the lexical melodies with light stems:

(18) a. Cv
   /H/   bàⁿ  ‘sheep’
   /HL/  kâ   ‘day’ (as locator in time)
   /L/   pùⁿ  ‘powder’
   /LH/  cê   ‘hole’
   /M/   —     —

b. CLv
   /H/   bló   ‘rain (n)’
   /L/   flɔ̀  ‘baobab (tree)’
   /LH/  fwɔⁿ  ‘fish’
   /M/   —     —

c. CvL
   /H/   tɔ́wⁿ  ‘iron’
   /HL/  búyⁿ  ‘spring (water)’
   /HM/  bɛ̀yⁿ  ‘winnowing van’
   /L/   pēyⁿ  ‘foot’
   /LH/  dɔ̀wⁿ  ‘cut (wound)’
   /M/   —     —

d. Cvv
   /H/   tííⁿ  ‘straw roof of granary’
   /HL/  yàà   ‘co-wife’
   /L/   mɛ̀è  ‘okra’
   /LH/  dèé   ‘sauce’
   /M/   —     —

e. CvvN (N = ŋ, all known examples)
   /H/   kóóŋ  ‘door (as object)’
   /HM/  dòóŋ  ‘fontanel’
   /LHL/ sòóŋ  ‘horse’
f. CvCv

/H/  gbéné  ‘cassava’
/HL/  bíkà  ‘fetish (idol)’
/HM/  ládsò  ‘mistletoe’
/L/  jákà  ‘manner’
/LH/  bâwáⁿ  ‘elephant’
/M/  —  —

Example with trisyllabic and other heavy stems are in (19). For these stems, the /H(M)/ type, e.g. ‘groundnut’ in (19a), is really a long /H/ stem whose final syllable drops to M-tone in isolation and prepausally. Such nouns flatten to all-H when phrased with following words. They are best interpreted structurally as having /H/ melody structurally, with terminal downstep before pause; we sometimes represent this as /H(M)/ melody. Ouattara prefers to transcribe such words with all-H tones.

Heavy stems also require us to subdivide /HL/ and /HL/ melodies. Since these melodies require a tone break and since the stems have two or more places where the break could occur, an asterisk indicates that the preceding tone extends into the middle. For example, CvCvCv can be /L*H/ CvCvCv, /LH*/ CvCvCv, /H*L/ CvCvCv, or /HL*/ CvCvCv. Monosyllabics and short (CvCv) bisyllabics cannot make these distinctions, so for them we just use /LH/ and /HL/.

(19)  a. CvCvCv

/H(M)/  bûgûnè  ‘groundnut’
/H*L/  sôyìkà  ‘hawk’
/HL*/  sísìyò  ‘young man’
/HLH/  sákòfòsò  ‘enemy’
/L/  kòròbà  ‘parrot’
/LH*  lèmàrù  ‘lemon’
/L*H/  diyìsò  ‘cockroach’
/LHM/  sèdùdù  ‘coucal (bird)’
/LHL/  —  —

b. other

/HLH/  bàrâ’ñà  ‘pond’
   wààm-bí  ‘orphan’ (compound)
CvCvv and CvCvL (with \(L = w, y, \eta\) are mid-heavy, i.e. somewhere between light and heavy. They do have alternative tone-break locations for /LH/ and /HL/ melodies, so we make use of asterisks in their melodic formulae (20a-b) as with trisyllables. For CvCvL, /H/ and /HM*/ are clearly distinct (20b). For CvCvv, there is a distinct /H*M*/ type with tone break medially in the long vowel, see ‘leaf’ in (20a). However, the distinction between /H(M*)/, i.e. /H/ with a prepausal drop of the final syllable to M, and true /H*M/, is less consistent in our data (20a). In addition to nouns \(kùrùú, kùrùú\), and \(kùrùá\) with different senses in (20a), we can add \(kùr = ā̆\) ‘hit(s) them’ from (41) below.

(20)

a. CvCvv

\[
\begin{align*}
/H(M*)/ & \quad dímií \quad \text{‘large oven’} \\
& \quad kúrùá \quad \text{‘navel’} \\
/HM* / & \quad kúrùá \quad \text{‘boat’} \\
/H*M/ & \quad bítọ̀ \quad \text{‘leaf’} \\
/HL*/ & \quad fítọ̀dọ̀ \quad \text{‘middle’} \\
/LH*/ & \quad bítí́ \quad \text{‘saddle’} \\
/L*H/ & \quad fúwáá \quad \text{‘aluminum’} \\
/LHM/ & \quad kàkó̄ \quad \text{‘donkey’} \\
/LHL/ & \quad bítáá\sim bítọ̀ \quad \text{‘leopard’}
\end{align*}
\]

b. CvCvL

\[
\begin{align*}
/H/ & \quad pɔ́rɔ́w\quad \text{‘thirst’} \\
/HM*/ & \quad kɔ́tɔ́w \quad \text{‘scraping tool’} \\
/HL*/ & \quad nɔ́rɔ̀ \quad \text{‘shade’} \\
/L/ & \quad pɔ́rɔ́w \quad \text{‘shoulderbag’} \\
/LH*/ & \quad gb̀yɔ́w\quad \text{‘African eggplant’} \\
/L*H/ & \quad kɔ̀rɔ́w\quad \text{‘forehead (bone)’} \\
/LHL/ & \quad sàwów\quad \text{‘cat’}
\end{align*}
\]

2.7.2 Tonal and segmental ablaut in verbs

Verbs have two stem forms, which we label perfective and imperfective although this oversimplifies their respective distributions. The relationship between perfective and imperfective forms is rather irregular, with many pairings that are clearly learned as such rather than being predictable by productive morphophonological processes. Both tones and segments are typically involved in the stem alternations. Because of these irregularities, we do not speak of lexical melodies of verbs. Details are reserved for chapter 8 on verb morphology.
2.7.3 Tone sandhi processes

2.7.3.1 LH#H-to-LL#H and LH#L-to-LL#H

LH-toned words whose final H is limited to a terminal mora or syllable, such as nouns with /LH/ or /L*H/ melodies, flatten to L-toned when closely phrased with a following word that begins with an H-tone. This is observable in N-Adj combinations and in N-N compounds. The initial element ranges from monosyllabics like dɛ̀ ɛ́ ‘sauce’ to trisyllabics like fɔ̀ ní ‘viper’. Examples of LH#H-to-LL#H with dígínā ‘one’ are fɔ̀ ní dígínā ‘one viper’ and dèè dígínā ‘one sauce’. The process also applies before adjectives, as in fɔ̀ ní sáŋgbɔráyà ‘a big viper’, and broadly before any word beginning in H-tone.

In a related process, LH#L-to-LL#H, the H-tone shifts from the final syllable or mora of the first element onto the second element. As a result, many adjectives have at least two tonal forms, one of which (following an /…LH/ noun) is due to this process. In N-Adj combinations affected by this, the adjective sometimes has an HL pattern with just the first syllable raised to H. In other N-Adj combinations, the adjective has an all-H or HM pattern, suggesting that the entire stem is raised. An example of the latter type is ‘white’, which occurs in L-toned form in sàỳ fìyà hā ‘white earth’ and in HM-toned form in yèyà fíyā hā ‘white ax’ < yèyà hā.

The delinking of the final H-tone from the first element does not apply to LH* nouns such as lèmùrà ‘lemon’ whose H-tone extends over two or more syllables: lèmùrà dígìnà ‘one lemon’.

2.7.3.2 HM#(H)-to-HH#(* H)

HM-toned nouns with a single M-toned syllable or mora, including those of true /HM/ melody, flatten to H-toned when closely phrased with a following word, as in N-Adj combinations. If the following word is all-H-toned, it is downstepped.

(21) a. bɔ́yɔ́ ɔ́ ‘dog’
    b. bɔ́yɔ́ ‘fɔ́yɔ́ ɔ́ ‘white dog’

2.7.3.3 <LH>-to-H

Under conditions not well understood, a monomoraic <LH>-toned word like nù ‘water’ or a final <LH> syllable flattens to H-toned (nù) before another word. An example is nù bàyà ‘wanting water’ in (155a) in §10.3.2. Another is the final syllable of yìrí ‘song’ in agentive compound yìrí-wólá-wí ‘singer’ (§4.2.3). This process applies regularly to 3Sg independent
pronoun *b̪o* in nonfinal position in clauses, for example in *b̪o lè* with the focus morpheme (§11.1).

However, monomoraic <LH>-toned words may alternatively undergo LH#H-to-LL#H or LH#L-to-LL#H (§2.7.3.1), i.e. flattening in the other direction, when phrased with a following word. An example of this is *ʃi ʃiyɛn* ‘white millet’ from *ʃi* ‘millet’, see (68c) in §5.3.

2.7.3.4 Tone-dropping after possessive *dí*

Nouns drop to L-toned after *dí* in the possessive sequence *X dí Y* ‘the Y of X’.

(22) noun 3Sg possessor gloss

| lèmúrú | ʃi dí lèmúrú | ‘his/her lemon’ |
| kèyàïà | ʃi dí kèyàïà | ‘his/her meat’ |
| diyàïàⁿ | ʃi dí diyàïàⁿ | ‘his/her fire’ |
3 Nouns, pronouns, and nominal modifiers

3.1 Nouns

3.1.1 Noun classes

Manessy (1982: 144) already identified several Tiefo-D nouns that contain now-frozen noun-class suffixes:

- $gV \sim \dot{g}V$, -de, -nu ~ -ru, -ne ~ -ni, -e, -a, -po, -ri, -n.

See the detailed commentary in W98: 106.

However, the synchronic system of noun classes revolves around the “vocalic prefix,” either à, ò, or ë. We write it as a separate word since it tends to encliticize to the preceding word if there is one. Often the vocalic prefix is absent clause-initially (i.e. for subject NPs). The class determines which 3Sg pronominal proclitic is used to represent the nouns, for example as subject proclitics in positive inflections: O-class and all humans take ñ, A-class nonhumans take ã, and E-class nouns (all nonhuman) take ē. There is still a semi-productive concord system in certain adjectives and the demonstratives.

Kin terms are difficult to elicit with a prefix since they are normally possessed. Possessors precede possessums and do not allow a vocalic prefix.

3.1.1.1 O-class nouns

The O-class is common for adult humans (23a) and animals (23b). There are also several important inanimates (23c). There is no consistent phonological signature for the O-class, but a fair number of the stems do end in a back rounded vowel or w.

(23) a. human O-class

- ò yā ‘woman’
- ò dżeý ‘man’
- ò sùn ‘blacksmith’
- ò tômí ‘chief’
- ò dë ‘elder sibling’
- ò ná-mí ‘child’
b. nonhuman animate O-class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ò sɔ́rgɔ́mɔ́n'</td>
<td>'fly (n)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò wù</td>
<td>'duiker (mammal)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò plòò́ŋ</td>
<td>'grasshopper'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò bárákà</td>
<td>'animal (any)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò mìlììn'</td>
<td>'chicken'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò cɔ́n'</td>
<td>'bird (any)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò fwɔ́n'</td>
<td>'fish (any)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò bɔ́yɔ́n'</td>
<td>'dog'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò dìdù</td>
<td>'louse'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò sàwówɔ́n'</td>
<td>'cat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò bìnɔ́</td>
<td>'baboon'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò sɔ̀mbi</td>
<td>'ground squirrel'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. inanimate O-class

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ò ngɔ́yɔ́n-bì</td>
<td>'star'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò sùùn'</td>
<td>'medication'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò pù</td>
<td>'water'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò nù</td>
<td>'oil, butter, (animal) fat'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò blò</td>
<td>'rain (n)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò yó</td>
<td>'tree'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò sà-pùn'</td>
<td>'sand'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò fèn'</td>
<td>'fonio (cultivated grain)'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò pòw'n'</td>
<td>'grass, (any) herbaceous plant'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò míyɔ́nɔ́</td>
<td>'rice’ (also ‘hippo’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò jùsù́n'</td>
<td>'thread; cotton’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò kàsù</td>
<td>'sorghum’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò tìgìcɔ́n'</td>
<td>'sesame’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ò pɔ̀n'</td>
<td>'rear end’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.1.2 A-class nouns

The A-class has some human nouns (24a). It is the favored class for body parts (24b). There are many A-class inanimates (24c). A recognizable subset of A-class nouns have final ða or ðɔ, often more specifically final yaða or yoðɔ, and are trisyllabic or longer (sometimes CCvð by syncope < *CvCvð) . It is possible that this ending is related to the noun ò yáyá ‘thing’ (24c). However, many A-class nouns have no special phonological signature.
(24)  a. human A-class

   à ɲ₅ⁿ  ‘person’ (plural  ø ɲ₅→ or  ø dyó→)
   à kásèⁿ  ‘white person’ (plural  ø kás₃→)
   à kà ~ kàyà  ‘mother’
   à téné  ‘aunt’

b. A-class body parts and inalienables

   à ɲmá  ‘head’
   à kédï  ‘body’
   à mzęyⁿ  ‘nose’
   à jügú  ‘eye(s)’
   à wí  ‘bone’
   à tòy  ‘ear’
   à kúrùú  ‘belly; ball’
   à kúrúú  ‘navel’
   à ɲzęyⁿ  ‘heart’
   à kéręy  ‘hand’
   à pęyⁿ  ‘foot’
   à yęyⁿ  ‘name’

c. nonhuman A-class

   à yáyá  ‘thing’ (plural  è yé→)
   à júú  ‘dance’
   à níí  ‘odor’
   à sów  ‘hat; head shawl’
   à wùú  ‘house’
   à dlⁿ  ‘cloud’ or ‘filth’
   à dl  ‘food’
   à färęy  ‘moon’
   à färërëy  ‘garment’
   à sùŋá  ‘morning’
   à dòwⁿ  ‘disease’
   à bītš  ‘leaf’
   à dɔyɔ  ‘kola nut’
   à dákųñî  ‘wood’
   à tərëyⁿ  ‘ladder’
   à kámęyⁿ  ‘yam’
   à néréyⁿ  ‘large grindstone’
   à kúrũũⁿ  ‘boat’
   à séréyⁿ  ‘rock’ (diminutive séré-bi)
à pşyɔw ‘stick (n)’
à pɔrɔw ‘shoulderbag’
à birgi ‘mud brick’
à sɔrɔw⁴ ‘charcoal’

d. nonhuman A-class, with final ⱥa or ⱦɔ
à ḋə́rɔ ‘market’
à ṭwŋ ‘wind (n)’
à ḋə́lɔ ‘knife’
à leý ‘smoke’
à yɛy ‘ax’
à yɛy ‘sun, day’
à kɑr ‘rainy season’
à lɪy ‘field’
à wɪy ‘snake’
à tɪy ‘place’
à tɪy ‘vagina’
à niy ‘mouth’
à dɪy ‘fire’
à dɪy ‘cockroach’
à dɔr ‘courtyard’ (variant à dɔri)
à fɪn ‘ashes’
à kɛy ‘meat’
à b(ʊ)lɛ ‘dust’
à p(ʊ)wɔ ‘porridge’
à pər ‘hunger’
à bər ‘pond’
à kən ‘sickle’

3.1.1.3 E-class nouns

All E-class nouns are inanimate. Nearly all to end in a front vowel or y, which likely reflecting an original suffix (word-final y often alternates with e/ɛ, including E-class object clitics). However, other nouns ending in these segments are O- or A-class (see the lists above).

(25) a. human E-class
    [none]
b. E-class body parts (final front vowel or y)

- è káyáyⁿ → ‘tooth’
- è báyáy → ‘hair’

c. other E-class inanimates (final front vowel or y)

- è lë → ‘house compound with courtyard’
- è piⁿ → ‘excrement’
- è fîⁿ → ‘time, moment’
- è ɲmé → ‘egg’
- è yéé → ‘gear’
- è dëé → ‘sauce’
- è nwéé → ‘balafon (native xylophone)’
- è sêéⁿ → ‘work (n)’
- è bóyⁿ → ‘granary’
- è déyⁿ → ‘twig’
- è têyⁿ → ‘daybreak’
- è sâyⁿ → ‘thorn’
- è jûwîⁿ → ‘fun, amusement’
- è sîgè → ‘fatigue’
- è sùnêé → ‘shea tree (Vitellaria)’
- è bàràyⁿ → ‘daba (hoe)’
- è sàñjây → ‘maize, corn’
- è kârày → ‘calabash’
- è bîklé → ‘money’
- è lékpàyâ → ‘calabash’

- è sùsù → ‘millet cakes’

d. other E-class inanimates (not ending in front vowel or y)

3.1.1.4 Class changes from singular to plural

Scattered in the lists above are a few nouns that change classes between singular and plural. The most important cases are in (26). These may be vestiges of a once more productive system of classes distinguishing singular from plural.

(26)  singular  plural  gloss

a. à yáyá  è yé←  ‘thing’
b. à n5ⁿ  ó n5→ ‘person’ (see below)
à kásèⁿ  ó kásè→ ‘white person’

3.1.1.5 ‘Person’ (à n5ⁿ) and suppletive plurals (ó ná-wò, ó dyó→)

This noun was mentioned in the preceding subsection as one that changes from singular A-class à n5ⁿ to plural O-class ó n5→. However, the morphologically regular (prolongation) plural ó n5→ is less common than two suppletive plurals.

(27) a. singular
(à) n5ⁿ

b. plural
(ó) n5→ (uncommon)
(ó) ná-wò
(ó) dyó→

“Singular” (à) n5ⁿ is used with a following numeral: (à) n5ⁿ ísáⁿ ‘three people’. An irregular plural (ó) ná-wò occurs in universally quantified (ó) ná-wò byé ‘everyone’. In the absence of a quantifier, either (ó) ná-wò or (ó) dyó→ may mean ‘people’.

The initial root in ná-wò is etymologically related to that of singular ná-mí ‘child’, plural ná-my-ô→ ‘children’. Compare Tiefo-D ná-bí ‘person’ (whose plural can also mean ‘children’) and ná-dë ‘old person’ (W98: 237, hyphens added).

(ó) dyó→ strikingly resembles the human and O-class plural form diô→ of the specific indefinite quantifier ‘a certain (one)’ (§5.7). However, the two differ tonally and cannot be directly equated synchronically.

3.1.2 Nominal plurals

The “plural” form is most common with count nouns. It can also be used with mass nouns to denote increased volume (‘lots of X’).

Most nouns are pluralized by prolongation of the final vowel or sonorant nucleus. This ranges from simple vowel length to a more intonation-like prolongation (even of already long vowels). We represent this by → (28). Short contour-toned vowels are split orthographically into two vowels in these plurals, as with ‘woman’.
Prolonged forms of already long vowels may introduce quasi-syllabic breaks, detected by observing a stress-like pulse in the middle of the long vowel. For example, \textit{wúú} can be realized as [\textit{wú}.ú\textit{→}] or even as [\textit{wú.wú}→]. This weak syllable break is sometimes represented by \textit{ʔ} or \textit{h} by some of the authors, but there is no clear glottal stop or aspiration.

Most nouns that end in nasalized vowels in the singular denasalize them in the plural. Examples from among many are in (29a). All known exceptions are in (29b). Most of these are Cvv monosyllabics that transition to \textit{e} or \textit{o} quality at the end of the prolongation. In ‘totem’, the nasalization originated in the rhotic (*\textit{n} \rightarrow \textit{r^n}) rather than in the vowels, which could account for the preservation of nasalization in the plural.

Two nouns have irregular plurals with a suffix -\textit{rɔ}, matching a much more productive plural type in Tiefo-D. The noun ‘man’ in (30a) also occurs as a compound final or adjectival modifier denoting males.
### 3.1.2 Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dɔ̀ɛ̀-dɔ̀rɔ̀ →</td>
<td>dɔ̀-rɔ̀ →</td>
<td>‘man’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔ̀ɛ̀-dɔ̀rɔ̀ →</td>
<td>dɔ̀-rɔ̀ →</td>
<td>‘male friend’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbɛ́-ɔ́rɔ́ →</td>
<td></td>
<td>‘sparrowhawk’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns ending in agentive -wì or diminutive -bì (or tonal variant), and ná-mí ‘child’ and related forms, have a plural with -yo→, whose y is probably the desyllabified final i of the stem or suffix. In addition, ná ‘person’ may be pluralized either directly as (denasalized) ná, or suppletively as dyó→.

#### Table 31

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kwáⁿ-wì</td>
<td>kwáⁿ-dyó →</td>
<td>‘(an) acquaintance’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(also káⁿ-wì etc.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñɔ́yáⁿ-bì</td>
<td>ñɔ́yáⁿ-b-yo →</td>
<td>‘star’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná-mí</td>
<td>ná-m-yó →</td>
<td>‘child’/‘children’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná-mí</td>
<td>ná-m-yó →</td>
<td>‘child’/‘children’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná-mí</td>
<td>ná-m-yó →</td>
<td>‘child’/‘children’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ná-mí</td>
<td>ná-m-yó →</td>
<td>‘person’/‘people’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few nouns are attested with different final vowel qualities in the singular and plural (the latter sometimes functioning more as a collective). ‘Hunter’ and ‘white person’ also show desanlization of the final syllable.

#### Table 32

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Pl</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>káⁿ-sáỳá</td>
<td>káⁿ-sáỳá</td>
<td>‘hunter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bítá</td>
<td>bítá</td>
<td>‘leaf’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kásá</td>
<td>kásá</td>
<td>‘white person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bláká</td>
<td>bláká</td>
<td>‘hare’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.1.3 Deverbal agentives (-wì)

Verbs form agentives with suffix -wì, distinct from H-toned -wí in denominal ‘owner of Y’ compounds (§4.2.2). The verb stem is raised to {H} overlay. The examples in (33) have no compound initials.
In spite of some moderately irregular correspondences, it is clear from (33) that the perfective stem is the usual basis for the agentive.

Both simple and compound agentives can function as modifiers of other nouns. (34) exemplifies with head nouns cɔ̀ⁿ ‘bird’ and kàɣá ‘griot, person of caste’.

For agentives with a compound initial, see §4.2.3.

### 3.1.4 Infinitive (ná)

A verb, or a verb phrase such as verb plus object (pronominal or nominal), may be nominalized by preposing ná to the imperfective stem of the verb. An H-toned monosyllabic imperfective is dropped a notch to M-toned. There is no subject marking. For ‘come’, of the two imperfective stems available, bà rather than the highly restricted bé (used after progressive wɔ̀ɣɔ̀) occurs in the infinitive (35b). Transitive infinitives occur preferentially with an overt pronominal or NP object, though object-less infinitives can be elicited (35c).

### (33) agentive gloss verb (Ipfv\Pfv) gloss (verb)

| dɔ́rwì | ‘buyer’ | dɔ́ (etc.)\dɛ̀ ‘buy’ |
| byélá-wì ~ byérá-wì | ‘farmer’ | byè\byélá-là ~ -rà ‘cultivate’ |
| jòlá-wì | ‘seller’ | jò\jòlà ‘sell’ |
| sèrè-wì | ‘woodworker’ | sèrè\sèrè ‘carve’ |
| dɔ̀wàⁿ-wì ~ dògáⁿ-wì | ‘sick person’ | dɔ̀wàⁿ\dògáⁿ ~ dìn ‘hurt’ |
| jùrà-wì | ‘dancer’ | jù\jù-là ‘dance’ |
| kɔ́ⁿ-wì | ‘acquaintance’ | kɔ̀ (stative) ‘know’ |
| tòlá-wì | ‘woodpecker’ | plà\plè ‘jab’ (with yó ‘tree’) |
| tòlá~wì | ‘leatherworker’ | tà\tà ‘join, link’ |

For agentives with a compound initial, see §4.2.3.

### (34) agentive gloss verb (Ipfv\Pfv) gloss (verb)

| cɔ̀ⁿ yó-plá-wì | ‘woodpecker’ | plà\plè | ‘jab’ (with yó ‘tree’) |
| kàɣá tà-wì | ‘weaver’ | tà\tà ‘join, link’ |

### (35) infinitive Ipfv Pfv gloss of verb

| a. ná sè | sè | sà | ‘go’ |
| ná sìgù | sìgù~ sìŋí | sìgù-mà | ‘run’ |
| ná cíⁿ | cíⁿ | cí-nà | ‘become small’ |
Infinitival VPs occur in same-subject event sequences (§13.2.2.1) and in purposive clauses (§13.5).

### 3.2 Pronouns

#### 3.2.1 Independent and proclitic pronouns

Array (36) presents the independent forms of pronouns, along with proclitics in subject function (preceding verbs or auxiliaries) and in possessive function (directly preceding nouns). Notice the delicate tonal distinctions in singular subject proclitics, which are partially flipped in possessor function. The *kà* variant 3Sg subject proclitic occurs in negative inflections (§9.1.2, §9.2.2, §9.3.2) and optionally in the future positive (§9.4.1).

(36) independent proclitic subject possessor

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1Sg</th>
<th>2Sg</th>
<th>3SgHum, 3SgO</th>
<th>3SgA</th>
<th>3SgE</th>
<th>3Sg (strong)</th>
<th>1PExcl</th>
<th>1PIncl</th>
<th>2P</th>
<th>3P</th>
<th>3P (strong)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>ní</td>
<td>mì</td>
<td>kà</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>bọ</td>
<td>é-yò</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>ná</td>
<td>ná</td>
<td>bòó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proclitic</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́ (&lt; *m̃)</td>
<td>ŋ̄, kà</td>
<td>ā, kà</td>
<td>ē̄, kà</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>yá(ń)á</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessor</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ̄</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The inclusive form *yá(ń)á* is not obligatory. Proclitics of segmental form ŋ̄ are syllabified postpausally before a consonant as syllabic labialized [ńʷ].

As subject, independent 3Sg *bọ* surfaces with rising tone in isolation and prepausally (e.g. as clause-final object). When not prepausal, it normally flattens to H-toned *bò* (§2.7.3.3).
Combinations with inflectional particles are future bö bī, imperfective bö wɔ̀ɣɔ̀, perfective bö kà ~ bö wà, and imperfective negative bö máŋà.

bèé, likely an original E-class variant of bö, functions as a discourse-definite pronoun (‘it’) or demonstrative (‘that’), denoting a state of affairs already introduced into the discourse (§5.4.2).

Independent forms optionally replace proclitics, which helps to distinguish 1Sg, 2Sg, and 3Sg proclitics. The independent third person pronouns bō and bóó are here labeled “strong.” When they replace regular third person proclitics, they may have logophoric-subject functions (§14.3). In (37a), bō (here bó ) functions logophorically since it is coindexed with the quoted author (Zaki). In (37b), kà is the regular 3Sg pronominal since it is not coindexed.

(37) a. zàkí fó=é [dè bó bì bà]  
Zaki say.Ipfv=3SgE [that 3Sg Fut come.Pfv]  
‘Zaki says/said that he (=Zaki) will come.’

b. ŋ́ fó=é [dè kà bì bà]  
1Sg say.Ipfv=3SgE [that 3Sg Fut come.Pfv]  
‘I said that he/she will come.’

3.2.2 Object enclitics

In object function, pronominals are encliticized to the verb. The nonhuman form =(y)aʕa occurs chiefly in the perfective as an indefinite inanimate object marker. The 3Sg nonhuman forms are used with certain verbs like ‘know’, ‘say’, and ‘see’, while some others use the human 3Sg for all objects.

(38) Enclitic object pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>= yⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>= wⁿ (requires preceding ø or ø)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
<td>= ò, = ô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgA</td>
<td>= (y)əʔə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgE</td>
<td>= ɨ (after ø ø a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= ɛ (after ø ø)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>= ː (tone, after u ̚)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>= ɛ́, = ò́</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>= nã</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>= æə, = øo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The vowel-initial clitics contract with the stem-final vowel of the verb, and there is some tone sandhi. These processes are exemplified by the paradigms below, beginning with ‘look at’ in perfective and imperfective form in (39). The perfective of this verb ends in +ATR e, and induces harmonization of the mid-height vowels in 2Sg, 3Sg, 1Pl, and 3Pl forms. The imperfective ends in a, which is treated as -ATR, so the contracted mid-height vowels are -ATR. The orthographic position of the clitic boundary = is somewhat arbitrary.

(39) ‘look at’  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>círè (Pfv)</th>
<th>córà (Ipfv)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>círè = ýⁿ</td>
<td>cór = âýⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>cír = ðwⁿ</td>
<td>cór = 5wⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
<td>cír = ò</td>
<td>cór = ɔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgA</td>
<td>cír = âìà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>círè = é</td>
<td>cór = êê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>círè = nã</td>
<td>córã = nã</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>cír = òò</td>
<td>cír = ɔɔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Combinations with ‘hit’, perfective and imperfective, are these:

(40) ‘hit’  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>kpà (Pfv)</th>
<th>kô (Ipfv)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>kpà = ýⁿ</td>
<td>kô = ýⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>kp = 3wⁿ</td>
<td>kô = wⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
<td>kp = ɔ</td>
<td>k = ɔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgA</td>
<td>kpi = yâfã</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>kp = êé</td>
<td>kô = ê</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>kpà = nã</td>
<td>kô = nã</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>kp = ɔɔ</td>
<td>k = ɔɔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Combinations with ‘touch’, perfective and imperfective, are these:

(41) ‘touch’  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>klà (Pfv)</th>
<th>kôrù (Ipfv)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>kl = âýⁿ</td>
<td>kûrû = ɔýⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>kl = 5wⁿ</td>
<td>kûrû = wⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
<td>kl = ɔ</td>
<td>kûr = ɔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3SgA</td>
<td>kl = âìà</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
There is no logophoric third person object pronoun. In (42), the 3Sg object clitic on the verb may refer either to the clausemate subject ‘Zaki’ or to another third person.

(42) zàkì jà [ʃj] k = òj

Zaki say.Pfv [1Sg hit.Pfv=3Sg]

‘Zaki said that I hit him/her.’

3.3 Adjectives

Adjectives may function as postnominal modifiers or as predicates. Several modifying adjectives have multiple forms. To some degree they still correlate with the prefix class of the noun (è, à, or ò), but there is much flux in usage.

Examples of modifying adjectives after wùu ‘house’ are in (43). The /LH/-melody noun drops to L-tone before an H tone, due to a regular tone sandhi process (§2.7.3.1). The nominal prefix, if present, is not repeated on the adjective.

(43) (à) wùù yìbì → / bí → / sàngbóráyà̂ / kwòslàyà / yòbbàyá

(Pref) house small / tiny / big / good / black

‘une maison petite/grosse/bonne/noire’

There are three ways to make an adjective into a predicate (10.1.2.3). First, there are two distinct stative predicate constructions. For some adjectives, the same form of the adjective that is used as modifier is preceded (for 3Sg subject) by kàʃà. For other adjectives the stative predicate has what appears to be an original nominalization plus gò ‘be’, e.g. “its redness exists.” Many adjectives also have a third predicative strategy, namely an associated inchoative verb (e.g. ‘become big’ or ‘become bigger’) that primarily denotes a completed or incremental change of state. These behave like ordinary intransitive verbs, with full perfective and imperfective paradigms. Inchoatives are included in (44) just below.

The paradigms of adjectives can be messy, with unpredictable phonological changes or even outright suppletion. Where no dedicated modifying adjective is shown, one can be concocted in the form of a participle from the inchoative verb. Likewise, if a stative predicate is absent it can be replaced by a perfective inchoative (‘has become ADJ’).

We present adjectives in small semantically based groups. The first group denotes overall size (44). For ‘big’, the longest form sàngbóráyà̂ tends to be emphatic. Likewise, yìbì ‘small’ is regularly prolonged as yìbì→ for emphasis, showing that this is the source of bí→ ‘tiny’
Recall that prosodically heavy stems with HM tone contours are structurally H-toned and may be phonetically H-toned when phrased with a numeral or other following word. The labels O, A, and E are suggestions as to the original noun-class concord function of the variants, but they do not consistently correlate with the noun-class of the nouns they modify. See §5.3 for arrays of actual N-Adj combinations, which bring out the imperfect concord between the classes of nouns (defined by their vocalic prefixes) and modifying adjectives.

Stem-wide tone alternations like that in sáŋgbūrâ'á^n ~ sáŋgbūrâ'á^n is at least partially explained by the LH#L→LL#H process (§2.7.3.1), whereby the final H-tone of an /LH/ or /L*H/ melody noun shifts onto the following word. In some cases it affects the onset of that word, in others is spreads rightward to the end of the stem.

(44) modifying stative 3Sg inchoative gloss

a. sáŋgbwï̀y^n ~ sáŋgbârâw^n (O) kâ'â tà tûgâ\tûgê ‘big’
   sângbûrây^n ~ sângbûrây^n (A)
   sângbûrây^n (E)

b. yîbî ~ yîbî→ à cî^n gî cî^n\cî-nà ‘small’

c. bî→ — — ‘tiny’

d. — — kâbâ\kêbê ‘many’

‘Big’ and ‘small’ are suppletive. In each, the stative and inchoative are phonologically related to each other, but both are unrelated to the modifying adjective. yîbî→ and bî→ ‘tiny’ have the prolonged pronunciation typical of expressive adverbials (“ideophones”). The verb kâbâ\kêbê ‘multiply, increase, become abundant’ has no modifying or stative counterpart, cf. the adverbial quantifier pyê→ ‘many, much, a lot’ (§5.6).

Next are scalar dimensions (45). ‘Long’ is suppletive. Tonal variants for ‘long’ are mostly due to LH#L→LL#H as explained above. kàñà is the 3Sg pronominal variant used in stative predicates. ‘Long’ also shows the effects of liquid-deletion (§2.6.5). All of these adjectives have the stative type with 3Sg kâñà.

(45) modifying stative 3Sg inchoative gloss

a. sòy^n (O) kâñà sëy^n jâñâ\jêñê ‘long, tall, far’
   sôrû^n ~ sôrû^n (A)
   sôre^n ~ sôre^n ~ sôre^n ~ sëy^n (E)

b. klá kâñà klá kláy\klégê ‘short’
c. — — nɔ́\nɔ́-mà ‘thin, slender’

d. jírày kàŋ jírá (~ jílā) — ‘thin, meager’

e. cɔ́ⁿ kàʕ à cɔ̂ⁿ cɔ́ŋɛ̀ ‘deep’

Next is taste (46). Food terms are mostly A-class, so these adjectives are usually in the A-class form. However, some nouns that can combine with taste adjectives, like ŋmɛ́ ‘egg’, are E-class.

(46) modifying stative 3Sg inchoative gloss

a. díyāʔa (A) kàŋ dá\dá⁹ ‘sweet, delicious’
dáyīⁿ (E)

b. tɛⁿ tɛⁿ tɛⁿ ‘bitter’

c. náyámèy ə náyámá gō náyámá\náyámè ‘sour’

Next is color (47). All three primary color terms have clearly distinct O, A, and E variants. However, their forms do not always match the actual class of the modified noun. ‘Red’ (which includes brown) has suppletive predicates, while ‘white’ and ‘black’ merely have phonological irregularities. Color adjectives have the stative form with gō.

(47) modifying stative 3Sg inchoative gloss

a. fy₃ⁿ ~ fỳwⁿ (O) à fỳyə́\fỳn ìŋá\fỳn ‘white’
fỳyə́ⁿ ~ fỳyə́ⁿ (A)
fỳyⁿ ~ fỳyⁿ (E)

b. sèⁿ ~ syⁿ ~ sɪy₃ⁿ (O) à náyά nō ɲáyά\ɲáy ‘red’
sìyā\sìyāⁿ ~ sìyā\sìyāⁿ (A)
sìyⁿ ~ sìyⁿ ~ sìyⁿ (E)

c. yòbò ~ yòbò ~ yòbòw (O) à yòw gō yɔ́\yɔ̀-hà ‘black’
yɔ̀bà́yə ~ yɔ̀bà́yə ~ yɔ̀bà́y (A)
yɔ̀bà́y ~ yɔ̀bà́y ~ yɔ̀bà́y (E)

Next, temperature and speed. ‘Cold’ and ‘slow’ are expressed by the same adjective, but ‘hot’ and ‘fast’ are lexically distinct.
(48)  modifying    stative    inchoative    gloss

a. ɲúr̃ ɔ̄ wⁿ ɲíríⁿ ɲír̃ā  ‘cold, slow’

b. fùú  fùū  fùù  tìg̃eⁿ tìg̃eⁿ  tìğ̃eⁿ  ‘hot’

c. páyání —  páyání  páyání  ‘fast’

Next, texture including wetness (49). ‘Wet (garment)’ and ‘fresh (grass)’ are related modifying adjectives. There is a suppletive verb for ‘wet’, though its participle pá dɔ́yɔ̀ can also be used as a modifier. Most of the statives have gö.

(49)  modifying    stative    inchoative    gloss

a. kàʕá-nà  à kàʕá-là  ‘coarse’

b. nàʕánā nàʕánā'yⁿ  à nàʕá-nàʕǎn gö  ‘hard, difficult’

c. — fōyⁿ|flǎ  ‘smooth’

d. bó̃rī bɔ̃rī  pā|pā  ‘wet; ‘fresh (grass)’

e. wàlāw (O, E) à wàlákā gö  wàlā\|wàlè  ‘dry’

wàlāl̃ā (A)

The remaining adjectives are lumped together in (50).

(50)  modifying    stative    inchoative    gloss

a. dè ŋ yìràà gö  yɔ̀r̃à\|yɔ̀r̃e  ì yè  ‘old’

díyà’ā  diyà’ā (A)

b. ñú̃  ñú̃ (OA)  à gö  ñú̃  ‘new’

fù̃yⁿ  fù̃yⁿ (E)

c. dúgú-mǎyⁿ  kàʕá dúgū  dúg̃ā\|dúg̃e  ‘heavy’

~ à dúwà  gö

d. fōỹ-mǎyⁿ  kàʕá fōỹ-m̃ ēf̃om̃\|f̃om̃è  ‘soft; lightweight’
3.4 Numerals

3.4.1 ‘1’

The numeral ‘1’ is *díginá*. It follows the noun, if the noun is overt. The same form is used in the counting cycle ‘1, 2, 3, …’. W98 (p. 145) reports *díŋa* for the extinct Noumoudara dialect.

3.4.2 ‘2’ to ‘9’

Array (51) presents our data (from Nyafogo) in the far-right column, alongside Winkelmann’s transcriptions for the two Tiefo-N dialects (W98: 145-146). Unlike nouns, numerals allow M-tone (see ‘2’).

(51) W98: Noumoudara W98: Nyafogo our Tiefo-N

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>W98: Noumoudara</th>
<th>W98: Nyafogo</th>
<th>our Tiefo-N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘2’</td>
<td><em>j3</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>jū</em>&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;*&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>j3</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘3’</td>
<td><em>sá</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>sá</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>sá</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘4’</td>
<td><em>ŋ3</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>ŋwō</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;*&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>ŋ(w)</em>&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;*&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘5’</td>
<td><em>kā</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>kā</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td><em>kā</em>&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In isolation, ‘2’ has an extended form *j3*<sup>a</sup>-*mī* ‘2’. This form is optionally used in the counting cycle.

‘6’ to ‘9’ consist of ‘5’ plus ‘1’ to ‘4’. *kā*<sup>a</sup> mutates slightly to *kā*<sup>a</sup> in this combination.

There is a suppletive, or at least heavily phonologically distorted, form for ‘1’ in the composite numeral ‘6’ (cf. *díginá* ‘1’). ‘3’ is denasalized from *sá*<sup>a</sup> to *sá*, as in Tiefo-D (W98: 145-146).
3.4.3 ‘10’ to ‘100’

kéy ‘10’ is presumably part of the etymological content of kpàýⁿ ‘20’. This in turn, in the slightly mutated form kpèýⁿ, is the base for ‘40’, ‘60’, ‘80’, and ‘100’, which simply add digits from ‘2’ to ‘5’ to the ‘20’-based term. A 20-based numeral system is known as vigesimal. The odd-numbered decimals ‘30’, ‘50’, ‘70’, and ‘90’ add nà támi to the next lower vigesimal term. This consists of nà ‘and, with’ plus what functions as a suppletive term for ‘10’. The incomplete Noumoudara and Nyafogo data from W98 are included in the inner columns.

The apparent tap r in the W98 Nyafogo forms is interesting historically given the frequent replacement of the final rhotic syllabic in bisyllabic verb stems by word-final y (Cvrv → Cvy), see §2.6.5 above.

3.4.4 ‘Thousand’ and ‘million’

‘Thousand’ is wòyò in combination with a following single-digit or other numeral. The LH tone pattern drops regularly to all-L before an H-tone by regular tone sandhi (§2.7.3.1). Examples are wòyò dígínà ‘one thousand’ and wòyò jỳⁿ ‘two thousand’.

nè, a variant of nà ‘and, with’, is used in combinations of a decimal or vigesimal term and a single-digit term: kény nè dígínà ‘11’, kény nè jỳⁿ ‘12’.
3.4.5 Ordinals

‘First’ as ordinal adjective is yępọ, which has no phonological relationship to diginà ‘1’. Its mix of +ATR and -ATR vowels suggests that it may have originally been composite.

Other ordinals are formed by adding suffix -dó to the numeral: jòó-dó ‘second’, sáó-dó ‘third’, ìyóó-dó ‘fourth’.
4 Nominal compounds

4.1 Ordinary compounds

Below are some compounds whose initial is $bêy^n$ ‘the bush, the brousse’. This initial, like other /LH/ stems, appears with level L-tone before an H-tone (54d-e) by the tone sandhi rule LH#H-to-LL#H (§2.7.3.1).

(54) a. $bêy^n$-$nêy^n$
   the.bush-guinea.fowl
   ‘wild guinea-fowl’ (< $bêy^n$, $nêy^n$)

b. $bêy^n$-sâwôô
   the.bush-cat
   ‘wild cat’ (< $bêy^n$, sâwôô)

c. $bêy^n$-sâyy
   the.bush-pig
   ‘warthog (Phacochoerus)’ (< $bêy^n$, sâý)

d. $bêy^n$-bôyôô
   the.bush-dog
   ‘wild dog, jackal’ (< $bêy^n$, bôyôô)

e. $bêy^n$-yôô
   the.bush-tree
   ‘tree(s) of the bush’ (< $bêy^n$, yôô)

Examples ending in body-part terms are in (55a-e). The final is lexically H-toned, but it drops to L-toned as compound final after an initial that is H-, HM-, or LH-toned (55a-c). The HM-toned initial flattens to H-toned in this combination (55b). The LH-toned initial flattens to L-toned, as though the final were still H-toned. Initials of other tone classes do not result in special morphotonological processes (55d-f).

(55) a. $bá^n$-$nmá$
   sheep-head
   ‘sheep’s head’ (< $bá^n$, nmá)
b.  bọy⁷ⁿ-ŋmà
    dog-head
    ‘dog’s head’ (< bọy⁷ⁿ, ŋmà )

c.  sọy-ŋmà
    pig-head
    ‘pig’s head’ (< sọy , ŋmà )

d.  sàwòwⁿ-ŋmà
    cat-head
    ‘cat’s head’ (< sàwòwⁿ, ŋmà )

e.  [sé-nɔ]-ŋmà
    [catfish]-head
    ‘catfish’s head’ (< sé-nɔ, ŋmà )

f.  cɔⁿ-ŋmà
    bird-head
    ‘bird’s head’ (< cɔⁿ, ŋmà )

Before an L-toned final like ‘foot’, initials present their regular tones.

(56) a.  bọy⁷ⁿ-pèyⁿ
    dog-foot
    ‘dog’s foot’ (< bọy⁷ⁿ, pèyⁿ )

b.  báⁿ-pèyⁿ
    sheep-foot
    ‘sheep’s foot’ (< báⁿ, pèyⁿ )

c.  cɔⁿ-pèyⁿ
    bird-foot
    ‘bird’s foot’ (< cɔⁿ, pèyⁿ )

The prefix vowel that precedes the compound (especially as post-verbal object) is determined by the initial.
4.2 Possessive-type compounds

4.2.1 ‘X’s Y’

Other compounds take the form of a possessor-possessum NP.

(57) sàñèyàñà-wùú
God-house
‘God’s house; sacrificial altar’ (< sàñèyàñà ‘God’, wùú ‘house’)

4.2.2 ‘Owner of Y’ (-wí)

These compounds (or derivatives) end in -wí. After a heavy H-toned noun it is heard as -wí with the usual automatic H-to-M drop.

(58) initial gloss ‘owner of Y’ gloss

| wùú | ‘house’ | wùú-wí | ‘homeowner, head of household’ |
| lè | ‘compound’ | lè-wí | ‘head of housing compound’ |
| sàyàⁿ | ‘thorn’ | sàyàⁿ-wí | ‘thorny’ |
| dșřiǐⁿ | ‘courtyard’ | dșřiǐⁿ-wí | ‘courtyard owner’ |
| bùyⁿ | ‘spring’ | bùyⁿ-wí | ‘owner of a spring’ |
| tìyàľà | ‘place’ | tìyàľà-wí | ‘owner of a landholding’ |
| bëřéyⁿ | ‘tomtom’ | bëřéyⁿ-wí | ‘owner of tomtom(s)’ |
| bìklé | ‘money’ | bìklé-wí | ‘owner of money’ |

The plural is -wí-yó → or with prolonged vowel.
The ‘owner’ construction is distinct from the deverbal agentive with L-toned suffix -wì (see below and §3.1.3).

4.2.3 Compound agentives (-wì)

For simple agentives with -wì added to an {H}-toned verb, see §3.1.3. Agentives lend themselves to compounding, with incorporated objects that designate a typical or pro-forma object.
### 4.3 Bahuvrihi compounds

In a bahuvrihi, both initial and final have their regular tonal form, except for low-level tone sandhi.

(60) a. \( ɲ5^n \) kùrù-sáŋbóráº

  person  belly-big

  ‘fat person’ (< kùrùú )

b. \( ɲ5^n \) ɲmá-sáŋbóráº

  person  head-big

  ‘big-headed person’ (< ɲmá )

### 4.4 Diminutives

The basic diminutive noun ‘child’ is (à) ná-mí ‘child’ (plural ná-my-ô→). This may already be a diminutive in form, since uncompounded náº ‘child’ is also attested (but uncommon, and regrettably homophonous with ‘cow’).

Some other lexified diminutives are sò-míi ‘pestle’ (cf. sòɛ́y ‘mortar’), kò-míì ‘finger’ (cf. kèrè́y ‘hand’), and ɲò-míi ‘toe’. These all have singular -míi becoming plural -my-ô→.

A somewhat more productive diminutive is with -bí (61) or -bì (62). The latter includes -bì after a heavy H-toned stem (‘star’).
### (61) Diminutive -\(bì\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diminutive</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>related</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. /HL/ or /HM/ to {H}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(tìgèⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘honey bee’</td>
<td>(tìgèⁿ) ‘honey’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(kárá-bì)</td>
<td>‘small calabash’</td>
<td>(kárá) ‘calabash’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bɔ́ɣɔ́ⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘puppy’</td>
<td>(bɔ́ɣɔ̄) ‘dog’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. /LH/ to {H}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nɛ́rɛ́ⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘small grindstone’</td>
<td>(nɛ́rɛ́ⁿ) ‘large grindstone’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nùnúⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘tongue’</td>
<td>(nùnúⁿ) ‘tongue’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. no tone change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(jùgú-bì)</td>
<td>‘(an) eye’</td>
<td>(jùgú) ‘eyes’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(kònèy-bì)</td>
<td>‘(a) word’</td>
<td>(kònèy) ‘talk (n)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(pɔ́-téréy-bì)</td>
<td>‘(one) buttock’</td>
<td>(pɔ́-téréy) ‘buttocks’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sɛ̀rɛ̀-bì)</td>
<td>‘small stone’</td>
<td>(sɛ̀rɛ̀) ‘rock’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(sìɲíříⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘young gecko’</td>
<td>(sìɲíříⁿ) ‘house gecko’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. no independently attested source</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(wáàm-bì) ~ (wɔ́m-bì)</td>
<td>‘orphan’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(yú-bì)</td>
<td>‘ring (on finger)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(búwɔ́ⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘kidney’</td>
<td>(búwɔ́ļɔ́) ‘back’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dáⁿ-ɲíříⁿ-bì)</td>
<td>‘ember’</td>
<td>(díýaĩäⁿ) ‘fire’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (62) Diminutive -\(bí\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>diminutive</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>related</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(fèm-bí)</td>
<td>‘cross-beams’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nɔ́yɔ́ⁿ-bí)</td>
<td>‘star’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(bátyààⁿ-bí)</td>
<td>‘arrow’</td>
<td>(bátyààⁿ) ‘bow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dìgè-bí)</td>
<td>‘pit of shea-tree fruit’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dɔ́yɔ̀-bí)</td>
<td>‘(one) kola nut’</td>
<td>(dɔ́yɔ̀) ‘kola (nuts)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dúléeⁿ sàⁿ-bí)</td>
<td>‘point of fishhook’</td>
<td>(sàⁿ) ‘thorn’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of -\(bì\) is -\(by-á\). The plural of -\(bí\) is -\(by-ó\).
5 Noun phrase (NP)

5.1 Order of elements within an NP

The maximal linear structure of an unpossessed NP is:

(63) vocalic prefix - noun - adjective - numeral - demonstrative - quantifier

Examples are in (64).

(64) a. à wùú kwɔ̄-lā́á
    Pref house good
    ‘a good house’ [pref n adj]

b. à wùú kwɔ̄-lā́á jɔ̄n
    Pref house good two
    ‘two good houses’ [pref n adj num]

c. à wùú jɔ̄n ɲwɔ́ʕɔ̀n
    Pref house two Dem
    ‘these two houses’ [pref n num dem]

d. à wùú ɲwɔ́ʕɔ̀n byé
    Pres house Dem all
    ‘all these houses’ [pref n dem quant]

5.2 Vocalic prefix before noun

Most nouns may be preceded by a “vocalic prefix.” We use the term “prefix” loosely, since it often encliticizes to a preceding word, and we therefore transcribe it as a separate word. The prefix is either à, ò, or è depending on the noun class. There is no consistent phonological principle for the choice of vowel. Some generalizations can be made based on meaning. Most human nouns have ò. è is the least common, does not seem to occur with human nouns, and tends to occur with nouns that contain an e or e vowel. Another observation is that nouns (mostly trisyllabic) ending in ʕa usually have à as prefix. So there are hints of an original noun-class agreement system involving suffixes as well as prefixes, but it is far from
systematic synchronically. Entries for noun stems in our lexicon indicate the vowel, if we have been able to elicit it.

Elicitation is not easy since some nouns are in practice not pronounced with a prefix in isolation (citation form) or clause-initially. For other nouns, the prefix is common though not obligatory in these positions. For example, ‘snake’ but not ‘elephant’ has an overt prefix in (65a) below. The vocalic prefix (if the noun has one) is most reliably elicitable when the noun functions as direct object following a verb like nɛ́|nà ‘see’. In this combination, however, the prefixal vowel contracts with the final vowel of the verb. The quality of the contracted vowel depends on that of the prefix vowel (except for its ATR value), so it allows us to identify the noun’s prefixal vowel quality. In other words, the prefix ends up as a kind of object-agreement enclitic on the preceding verb. For example, we identify the prefix as ò for ‘elephant’ based on (65c) and as è for ‘granary’ based on (65d), extrapolating from the surface vowel quality of ‘see’ (perfective). With some difficulty, we then elicit ò bàwáⁿ ‘elephant’ and è bóîⁿ ‘granary’ as independent forms. (65b) confirms à for ‘snake’.

(65) a. bàwáⁿ/ à wíyá’àà nà = yⁿ
   elephant/ Pref snake see.Pfv=1Sg
   ‘A/The elephant/snake saw me.’

b. jí nà = [à wíyá’àà]
   1Sg see.Pfv=[Pref snake]
   ‘I saw a/the snake.’

c. jí nà = [bàwáⁿ]
   1Sg see.Pfv=[Pref elephant]
   ‘I saw an/the elephant.’

d. ñè nà = [è bóîⁿ]
   1Sg see.Pfv=[Pref granary]
   ‘I saw a/the granary.’

Personal names normally lack vocalic prefixes. However, in postverbal object position they are sometimes treated like ‘elephant’.

Elicitation of examples involving verbs, like (65b-d), was difficult with our informants. There was a tendency to replace forms like nɔ̀ = ɔ̀, nà = à, and nè = è, including the prefix for the following noun, with a 3Sg pronominal object form. In this case, it meant a tendency to generalize nɔ̀ = ɔ̀, which is the form for ‘saw him/her’, without a nominal object. This is likely an artefact of elicitation, where an informant switched between NPs and 3Sg pronouns as utterances were repeated. The object may be indefinite on the first occurrence (‘I saw an elephant’), but beginning with the second it has become definite and may be pronominalized.
So the whole sequence could go something like ‘I saw an elephant’ repeated as ‘I saw it’, followed in turn (after we asked the informant to include ‘elephant’) by ‘I saw him/her/it, the elephant’.

Hantgan noticed that the vocalic prefix is absent when the noun is followed by a numeral or other quantifier (2014ms: 28). We confirm that although ‘snake’ usually has the prefix clause-initially, see (65a) above, the prefix is dropped when a numeral is added, as in (66a) below. Similarly, the distinction in contracted vowel features in (65b-c) above disappears when a numeral is added to ‘elephant’ and to ‘snake’ (66b-c). However, the issues described in the preceding paragraph concerning repetitions make isolation and clause-initial forms most reliable whenever they can be elicited with a prefix.

(66) a. [(# â) wíyáñà j3n] jà=yn
([#Pref] snake two] see.Pfv=1Sg
‘Two snakes saw me.’

b.  jí jà [bàwàn j3n]
1Sg  see.Pfv [elephant two]
‘I saw two elephants.’

c.  jí jà [wíyáñà j3n]
1Sg  see.Pfv [snake two]
‘I saw two snakes.’

Some nouns have an optional nasal onset that can appear in isolation and that functions roughly like a vocalic prefix. Compare dùrú in (67a) with ñ-dùrú in (67b). These nouns also appear to have the usual vocalic prefix that encliticizes to a preceding verb, even when the noun has the nasal element (67c).

(67) a.  dùrú digsína
mouse one
‘one mouse’

b.  ñ-dùrú jà=yn
Nasal-mouse see.Pfv=1Sg
‘A/The mouse saw me.’

c.  jí j3=[ð] ñ-dùrú
1Sg  see.Pfv=[Pref Nasal-mouse]
‘I saw a/the mouse.’
See also ŋ̀-bló ‘rain (n)’, pronounced [ŋbló], in (201) in §13.6.3.

For the extinct dialect of Noumoudara, Winkelmann reported (W98: 135) that the “articles” ŋ̀ (singular) and ŋō (plural, not common) were homophonous with the corresponding third person possessor forms: ŋ̀ nābī ‘(a/the) child’ or ‘his/her/its child’, ŋō yāā nā¹bīō ‘the children of the women’.

5.3 Noun and adjective

Adjectives and similar modifiers such as relative clauses follow the noun. As indicated in §3.3 above, some adjectives still have up to three distinct segmental forms, one roughly associated with human and O-class nouns, one roughly associated with A-class nouns, and one roughly associated with E-class nouns. In other words, what was probably once a productive class-concord system has not completely disappeared. However, even adjectives that still have two or three forms do not deploy them strictly in this manner. Depending on the adjective, the old O-class or the old A-class form may be generalizing, or one or other of the forms may have become semantically specialized (e.g. emphatic in the cases of ‘big’ and ‘small’).

(68) below presents examples of how nouns and adjectives combine, with emphasis on tones. Nouns ending in rising /LH/ tones (‘house’, ‘millet’, ‘ax’) shift the H-tone onto the adjective by a regular tone sandhi process (§2.7.3.1). Nouns ending in falling /HM/ tones (‘dog’) flatten to H-toned, but induce downstep on a following H-toned adjective (‘white’, ‘small’). See HM#(H)-to-HH#(H) (§2.7.3.2).

The data here show partial correlations of adjectival forms with nominal classes (O, A, and E). Among the O-class nouns in (68a), ‘tree’ is the strictest in respecting concord, while ‘dog’ and ‘bird’ seem to stray from this in the adjective ‘long’. Among the A-class nouns in (68b), ‘house’ and ‘ax’ obey regular concord the most, while ‘stone’ has some E-class adjectives. Among the E-class nouns in (68c), ‘millet’ and ‘chewstick’ obey regular concord, while ‘earth’ has A-class forms. Elicitation of these combinations was difficult and there is more variation in adjectival forms than is presented here.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(68)</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. O-class</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (ò) bɔ́yɔ́n | ‘dog’ | bɔ́yɔ́n ‘fɔ́yɔ́n’ | bɔ́yɔ́n ‘yibi’-
| bɔ́yɔ́n sèn | bɔ́yɔ́n yɔ̀bɔ́ | bɔ́yɔ́n fùù |
(ò) [assembly]

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>c³ⁿ</td>
<td>‘bird’</td>
<td>c³ⁿ fy³ⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c³ⁿ sy³ⁿ ~ sëⁿ</td>
<td>c³ⁿ yòbò</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c³ⁿ sêyⁿ</td>
<td>c³ⁿ fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ò) [assembly]|

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yó</td>
<td>‘tree’</td>
<td>yó fiywⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yó sìyòⁿ ~ sëⁿ</td>
<td>yó yòbòw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yó sòròwⁿ</td>
<td>yó fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. A-class

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>wùú</td>
<td>‘house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wùú fiyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>wùú yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wùú sìyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>wùú yòbàfà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wùú sòròwⁿ</td>
<td>wùú fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>wìyáfà</td>
<td>‘snake’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wìyáfà fyòⁿ</td>
<td>wìyáfà yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wìyáfà sìyàfàⁿ</td>
<td>wìyáfà yòbàfà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wìyáfà sòròwⁿ</td>
<td>wìyáfà fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>sèrèyⁿ</td>
<td>‘stone’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèrèyⁿ fyòⁿ</td>
<td>sèrèyⁿ yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèrèyⁿ sìfèyⁿ</td>
<td>sèrèyⁿ yòbày</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sèrèyⁿ sòròwⁿ</td>
<td>sèrèyⁿ fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>yèyáfà</td>
<td>‘ax’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèyáfà fiyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>yèyáfà yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèyáfà sìyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>yèyáfà yòbàfà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yèyáfà sòròwⁿ</td>
<td>yèyáfà fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ</td>
<td>‘chewstick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ fiyèyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ yìbi(→)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ sìfèyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ yòbày</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ sòròyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


c. E-class

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>è</td>
<td>fí</td>
<td>‘millet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fí fiyèyⁿ</td>
<td>fí yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fí sìfèyⁿ</td>
<td>fí yòbày</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fí sòròyⁿ</td>
<td>fí fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>è</td>
<td>sày</td>
<td>‘earth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sày fiyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>sày yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sày sìyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>sày yòbàfà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sày fuú</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>è</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ</td>
<td>‘chewstick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ fiyèyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ yìbi(→)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ sìfèyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ yòbày</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbéseyⁿ sòròyⁿ</td>
<td>gbéseyⁿ fuú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

wìyáfà ‘snake’ is optionally truncated to wá before an adjective: wá yòbàfà ‘black snake’.

The plural is marked (by prolongation and sometimes by vowel-quality change) on the adjective (69b,d,e). The noun is generally not overtly pluralized (69b,e), but nouns like ‘man’ that have a segmentally distinct plural optionally use it before the adjective (69d).

(69)

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>à</td>
<td>wùú</td>
<td>‘house’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wùú fiyáfàⁿ</td>
<td>wùú yìbi→</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house white</td>
<td>‘(a/the) white house’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. wùù fiyⁿ→
   house white.Pl
   ‘white houses’

c. dɔ̀ɛ̯ý sèⁿ
   man red
   ‘a red (=brown-skinned) man’

d. dɔ̀-rɔ̀→ / dɔ̀ɛ̯ý siyɔ̀→
   man.Pl / man red.Pl
   ‘red (=brown-skinned) men’

e. cɔ̀ⁿ siyɔ̀→
   bird red.Pl
   ‘red birds’

5.4 Demonstratives

5.4.1 Deictic ‘this, that’ (ŋɔ́ɔⁿ, ṭɔ́ɛ́éⁿ)

There is only one demonstrative category, and no distinction between proximate and distant. The form is normally ŋɔ́ɔⁿ, always so for O and A classes of noun. A specifically E-class form ṭɔ́ɛ́éⁿ is attested in è sɔ̯ɛ̀éⁿ ŋɔ́ɔⁿ ‘this work’ (< sɔ́ɛ́éⁿ).

The demonstrative is used by themselves, or it is added to an already number-specified noun. The demonstrative itself does not mark number. Examples: dɔ́ɛ̯ý ŋɔ́ɔⁿ ‘this man’, dɔ̀-rɔ̀ ŋɔ́ɔⁿ ‘these men’, yà ŋɔ́ɔⁿ ‘this woman’, wùù ŋɔ́ɔⁿ ‘this house’ (< dɔ́ɛ́y, dɔ̀-rɔ̀, yà, wùù). Nouns like wùù ‘house’ that have a final rising tone flatten to L-tone by regular tone sandhi before the initial H-tone of the demonstrative.

5.4.2 Discourse-definite ‘that’ (bèé)

bèé is used by itself absolutely (i.e. without a noun) as a discourse-definite ‘it’ or ‘that’ denoting a state of affairs that has been presented in preceding discourse. It occurs in expressions like ‘I said that (to …)’, referring to a fact or state of affairs already alive in the discourse. It is likely an E-class form of third person independent pronoun bò.
5.4.3 Demonstrative adverbs

The common ones are *fâ*n ‘here’, *fânè ~ *fândè ‘around here’ or ‘over there’, and *mā ‘there (discourse-definite)’.

5.5 Possession

A pronominal possessor may be expressed by a proclitic preceding the possessum. For 2Sg there is also another option, a suffix -è. For all pronominal categories it is also possible to use the independent form of the pronoun as possessor.

The proclitic series differs tonally from the segmentally similar subject proclitics. First person proclitics are L-toned as possessors versus H-toned as subjects. Second person proclitics are L-toned as possessors, like the L-toned subject proclitic for 2Sg, but unlike the M-toned subject proclitic for 2Pl.

(70) proclitic suffix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>proclitic</th>
<th>suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>˘</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>˘</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>˘m</td>
<td>-è</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>nà</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>˘</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>˘</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The -è suffix is optional for 2Sg possessor. It does not co-occur with proclitic ˘m, so the speaker must choose one or the other. -è occurs systematically for the 2Sg complement of postpositions (§7.3.2)

A genitive-like morpheme *dí* is optionally inserted between the possessor (even if a proclitic pronoun) and the possessum. It imposes {L} overlay on the following noun. It may be related etymologically to the noun *dí* (unpossessed) or *dýó́ ~ dó* (possessed) meaning ‘(someone’s) share’, cf. also the possessive predicate pattern *X dé=˘y* ‘it belongs to X’ (§10.2.5.2).

Examples of genitive function, also illustrating the tone-dropping of the possessum, are in (71).

(71) a. ˘ dí kîyà˘fà ‘our meat’ < kîyà˘fà
b. ˘ dí dîy˘à˘fà˘n ‘my fire’ < dîy˘à˘fà˘n
  c. zàkí dí dîy˘à˘fà˘n ‘Zaki’s fire’ < dîy˘à˘fà˘n

54
Using *báⁿ* ‘sheep’ as possessum, there are no fewer than five ways to express 2Sg possessor: independent pronoun *mì* (72a), proclitic *m̀* (72b), proclitic plus genitive *dí* (72c), independent pronoun plus genitive *dí* (72d) and suffix *-ɛ̀* (72e). The suffix does not co-occur with any of the preposed possessives.

(72) ‘your-Sg sheep’

a. *mì báⁿ*

b. *m̀ báⁿ*

c. *m̀ dí báⁿ*

d. *mì dí báⁿ*

e. *báⁿ-ɛ̀*

Further examples of possessor-possessum combinations:

(73) a. ɲí / ū báⁿ

1Sg sheep

‘my sheep’

b. bò dí bàⁿ

3Sg Poss sheep

‘his/her sheep’ (with independent 3Sg pronoun *bò*)

c. [ŋ̀ tāⁿ] báⁿ

[1Sg father] sheep

‘my father’s sheep’

If the possessum is omitted (e.g. because already known in context), the semantically minimal noun *dɔ́ɣɔ́* ‘possession; (someone’s) share’ is the default.

(74) ɲ dɔ́ɣɔ́

1Sg share(n)

‘mine’ (French *le mien* etc.)

5.6 Quantification (‘all’, ‘many/much’, ‘few/little’)

Quantifiers follow the modified noun, and are compatible with a vocalic prefix preceding the noun. They include *byé* ‘all’, *pyé* ‘many/much’, *jɔ̀dɔ̀* ‘(a) few/a little’, and *yibí* ‘(a) few/a little’ (diminutive). Intonationally prolonged variants are regular with ‘many/much’ (*pyé*→).
fairly common with ‘all’ (byé→), and possible with ‘a few’ (j5y3→). There is no conspicuous final-vowel prolongation of plurals for nouns like ‘dog’ before these quantifiers (75a-c). However, nouns that have a segmentally distinct plural, like ‘man’, use the plural form before these quantifiers (75d).

\[(75)\]

a.  đ̱ b5yঋ byé
    Pref   dog   all
    ‘all (the) dogs’

b.  đ̱ b5yঋ pyé→
    Pref   dog   many/much
    ‘many dogs’

c.  đ̱ b5yঋ j5yঋ→
    Pref   dog   a.few
    ‘(a) few dogs’

d.  đ̱ dɔ̀-rɔ̀ byé / pyé→ / j5yঋ→
    Pref   man-Pl  all / many / a few
    ‘all the men/men/ many men/a few men’

5.7 Specific indefinite dì̩ ~ dì ‘a certain’ and plural di̩→ ~ di̩→

These forms may follow a noun and any inner modifiers. They are indefinite but specific, and typically introduce discourse referents that will be referred back to later by regular 3Sg or 3Pl pronouns. They can be glossed as singular ‘a certain X’ or plural ‘some (=certain) Xs’.

Singular dì̩ and plural di̩→ are used with E-class and nonhuman A-class nouns, while singular dì and plural di̩→ occur with human nouns and with nonhuman O-class nouns. These forms may be used with any noun but they are especially common with nouns yáyá ‘thing, object’, cě ‘matter, thing (abstract)’, and jł5 ‘person’ (compare English something, someone/somebody). The noun may appear with its vocalic prefix as it would elsewhere.

\[(76)\]

a.  (è) yáyá dì̩ ‘a certain thing/object’ or ‘something’ (specific)
    (è) cě dì̩ ‘a certain matter’
    (è) cě di̩→ ‘certain matters’

b.  (à) wùù dì̩ ‘a certain house’
    (à) wùù di̩→ ‘certain houses’
c.  (à) $\text{n}^3 \text{di} \quad \text{‘a certain person’ or ‘someone’ (specific)}$

(ò) $\text{n}^3 \text{diò} \quad \text{‘certain people’ or ‘some people’ (specific)}$

dìò→ differs tonally from suppletive plural noun (ò) dyó→ ‘people’ (§3.1.1.5). Their historical relationship is unclear.
6 NP coordination

6.1 ‘X and/with Y’ (nà)

The particle nà ‘with, and’ is placed between the two conjuncts.

(77) [d ámb nà yá] bà
[man with woman] come.Pfv
‘A man and a woman (< yá) came.’

nà also functions as an instrumental or comitative preposition (§7.2).

6.2 ‘X or Y’ (tà)

Particle tà ‘or’ is placed between the two disjuncts. Disjunction is closely related to polar interrogation, so both disjuncts are normally accompanied by an interrogative particle.

(78) d ámb wà tà yá wà
man Q or woman Q
‘a man? or a woman?’
7 Adpositions

Most adpositions are postposed to NPs. For pronominal paradigms of the postpositions see §7.3.1-22. The exception is instrumental-comitative nà ‘with, any’ which is preposed; it is also the ‘and’ conjunction (§6.1).

7.1 Dative and benefactive

7.1.1 Indirect object with ditransitive verb

The indirect object in a typical ditransitive is expressed by a verb ṭɔ̄n̩ the third person singular, combined with a preceding verb like ‘give’ or ‘show’; see §10.1.5 for examples. ṭɔ̄n̩, which also occurs in benefactive constructions (see just below), by itself is a verb meaning ‘help (with money)’.

7.1.2 Benefactive objects (bāyā, ṭɔ̄n̩... nɔ̄)

Two constructions are recorded in which a kind of benefactive object is added to an already complete clause.

In (79), the postposition bāyā, also found in the ‘have’ construction (§10.2.5.1), functions like a benefactive, though literally it indicates that the referent in question will end up possessing the object given (79).

(79) ū̄ bā nā [ò̄ ɲù] [ŋ̩ kà] bāyā
     1Sg   come.Pfv with [Pref water] [[1Sg mother] Poss]
     ‘I have brought water for my mother.’

The second construction includes ṭɔ̄n̩ ‘help (with money)’, here in imperfective form ṭɔ̄n̩, plus what appears to be a benefactive postposition nɔ̄ (80). The verb ṭɔ̄n̩ is also part of the two-part ‘give’ construction (§10.1.5). A motion verb in the first clause (in this example ‘come’) is repeated in infinitival form before ṭɔ̄n̩, cf. the repetitions of motion verbs in (197a-b) in §13.5.
7.2 Instrumental or comitative (nà)

7.2.1 Simple instrumental/comitative phrases

nà ‘with’ is a preposition (not a postposition). It may have instrumental or comitative function: nà yèyà‘á ‘with (=by means of) an ax’, nà yà ‘with (=in the company of) a woman’.

a. ŋ̄ kpà dáyáńí [nà yèyà‘á] 3Sg hit.Pfv wood [with ax] ‘He cut the wood with an ax.’

b. ŋ̄ byé-rà [nà zàkí] 1Sg cultivate-Pfv [with Z] ‘I cultivated (=farmed) with Zaki.’

For nà as the basic ‘and’ conjunction, see §6.1 above.

7.2.2 ‘Bring’ and ‘take (there)’

Directionally-specified predicates of conveyance (‘bring’, ‘take/deliver [there]’) are expressed by combining ‘come’ or ‘go’ with a comitative nà phrase. For centripetal (ventive) direction: bà ‘come’ (perfective=imperfective), bà [nà X] ‘bring (=come with) X’. For noncentripetal (itive) direction, the stative (or resultative) fyé is preferred to dynamic (aspect-marking) së\sà ‘go’ in reports of recent events: fyé ‘have gone, be gone’, fyé [nà X] ‘take/have taken X (there)’. Regular së\sà ‘go’ must be used in other inflectional contexts such as negatives and futures (82a-b).

a. zàkí kà sē nà = [à sikàrî]=? Z PfvNeg go.Ipfv with [Pref sugar]=Neg ‘Zaki didn’t take the sugar (there).’
b.  zàkí  bì  sà  nà = [à  síkàrìí]  
Z  Fut  go.Pfv  with  [Pref  sugar]  
‘Zaki will take the sugar (there).’

7.3  Spatial postpositions

7.3.1  Primary locative postpositions (tɔⁿ and wúrí)

Postposition tɔⁿ is a general locative ‘in X’ or ‘at X’. Specifically ‘inside X’ is expressed by wúrí. These locative postpositions can be used in stative (‘in’) as well as dynamic (‘to’, ‘from’) contexts, the distinction being made by verbs.

(83)  a.  ŋ̄  gò  [[à  wùú]  tɔⁿ]  
3Sg  be  [[Pref  house]  in]  
‘He is in the house.’

b.  zàkí  fyê  [[è  lè]  wúrí]  
Z  go.Stat  [[Pref  compound]  inside]  
‘Zaki has gone into the house (housing compound).’ (< lè)

‘Where?’ interrogatives do distinguish allative- ablative ‘whither?/whence?’ from static ‘where?’, but by suppletion rather than by changing a postposition (§11.2.2.3).

7.3.2  Other spatial postpositions

The remaining postpositions are mostly spatial. Those in (84) appear to be single morphemes. We know of no decomposition of pwèyⁿtò though it sounds like a compound. The postposition in (84b) is composite.

(84)  a.  X fyê  ‘behind X’
    X yèyⁿ  ‘in front of X’ (< yè ‘face’)
    X sàyáy  ‘under X; near X’
    X pwèyⁿtò  ‘under X’ (< pwèyⁿtò ‘lower buttocks’)
    X kírìíⁿ  ‘beside X’
    X ña  ‘on X; over X’
    X&Y fítòòⁿ  ‘between X and Y’

b.  X ŋmáⁿ-tàyáy  ‘above, over’ (< ŋmá ‘head’, tíyááá ‘place’)

61
Postpositions can follow nonpronominal NPs or proclitic pronouns. The proclitics have the same tonal form as possessor proclitics (§5.5), as opposed to subject proclitics. Independent pronouns are also possible, but are less common than proclitics. For 2Sg the usual proclitic ŋ̀ is not used with postpositions; instead, a suffix -ɛ̀ is added. This suffix is also possible, but not obligatory, for 2Sg possessor with a possessed noun. Sample paradigms for postpositions are in (85). H-toned 2Pl nà in the ‘on’ paradigm is unexpected but was double-checked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(85)</th>
<th>‘in front of’</th>
<th>‘on’</th>
<th>‘behind’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ŋ̀ yéýⁿ</td>
<td>ŋ̀ fîⁿ</td>
<td>ŋ̀ fyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>è yéýⁿ</td>
<td>è fîⁿ</td>
<td>è fyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>yé-è</td>
<td>fîⁿ-yè</td>
<td>fyé-è</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>nà yèyⁿ</td>
<td>ná fîⁿ</td>
<td>nà fyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>ŋ̀ yéyⁿ</td>
<td>ŋ̀ fîⁿ</td>
<td>ŋ̀ fyé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>ô yéyⁿ</td>
<td>Ô fîⁿ</td>
<td>Ô fyé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of independent pronouns with ‘on’ are: 1Sg ŋ̀fîⁿ, 2Sg mì fîⁿ, and 3Pl bòó fîⁿ.

7.3.3 Absence of overt locative postposition

Especially in high-frequency locational expressions that do not focus on precise spatial configurations, a bare postverbal NP may be interpreted as locative.

(86) a. ŋ̀ gô [è sgèeⁿ]  
1Sg be [Pref work(n)]  
‘I am at work.’

b. ŋ̀ gô [è lê]  
1Sg be [Pref house.compound]  
‘I am at home.’

7.4 Goal and cause

The noun yéýⁿ ‘name’ may function as a postposition meaning ‘in the name of X, on account of X, for the sake of X’, where X is a person.

There is no dedicated purposive postposition ‘for X’. However, the ‘behind X’ postposition can be used in a purposive context. Cf. English what is he really after?
(87) ṣy ꙣā [sʊýⁿ lè ṣyé] 3Sg come.Pfv [gold Foc behind] ‘It is/was gold [focus] that he/she came for.’

The ‘why?’ interrogative biè-já contains biè ‘what?’ plus an element já. In this context, já functions like a frozen purposive postposition. However, já- also occurs as an interrogative morpheme in a few combinations like já-tàʕày ‘where?’, so its synchronic function and even its etymological origin in biè-já ‘why?’ are not transparent.

7.5 Possession and desire

Postpositional phrase X bàʕā occurs in predications of possession: Y is [X bàʕā] means ‘X has Y’. See §10.2.5.1 for examples.

A distinct postposition bàyà occurs in predications of desire: X want [Y bàyà] means ‘X wants Y’. See §10.3.2.
8 Verb morphology

The present chapter focuses on the forms of perfective and imperfective stems at word-level. The terms “perfective” and “imperfective” are misleading, since the two stems are distributed over the various phrase-level tense, aspect, mood, and negation (TAMN) categories in a somewhat complex fashion. For a quick summary of their distributions, see Table 1 at the beginning of chapter 9 below.

8.1 Imperfective and perfective stems

In general, the perfective stem is marked. Sometimes it has a -Cv or similar suffix not present in the imperfective stem. In other cases the two have the same syllabic shape and differ in some idiosyncratic way, if at all. The differences can be tonal, vocalic, and occasionally consonantal.

The full citation form of a verb is exemplified by gbā\gbà ‘split (wood), shatter’ and by fwɔ́\fwɔ́-là ‘blow’. The imperfective stem is given first, followed by the separator \ and the perfective stem. In contexts where the meaning rather than morphology is relevant, we sometimes use the imperfective as the citation form.

8.2 Verbs with identical imperfective and perfective stems

Some verbs do not distinguish perfective and imperfective stems. Possible reasons for this are a) the verb is borrowed (from Jula or other source); b) an original aspectual split has been lost as the language declines in vitality; c) the imperfective is already tonally L- or HL-toned and ends in a or e/ɛ, so it already fits the tonal and vocalic targets typical of perfectives. Variants due to optional n/r alternations are disregarded in determining whether the stems are identical, but it is possible that individual speakers might specialize one variant as imperfective and the other as perfective.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(88)</th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. L-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dà</td>
<td>dà</td>
<td>‘crumple, wrinkle’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tà</td>
<td>tà</td>
<td>‘join, link (end to end)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kɔ̀ⁿ</td>
<td>kɔ̀ⁿ</td>
<td>‘understand’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báyà</td>
<td>báyà</td>
<td>‘hang (sth) up’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔ̀rã</td>
<td>dɔ̀rã</td>
<td>‘lock (door)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>dɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>‘boil (e.g. rice) in a pot’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbɛ̀rɛ́</td>
<td>gbɛ̀rɛ́</td>
<td>‘hold and lift (sb)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mànì</td>
<td>mànì</td>
<td>‘build’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nɔ̀rɔ́ⁿ – nɔ̀y</td>
<td>nɔ̀nɔ́ – nɔ̀rɔ́ⁿ</td>
<td>‘drive away, expel’ (see §8.6.2.4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔ̀rɔ́</td>
<td>sɔ̀rɔ́</td>
<td>‘defecate’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>sɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>‘give; send (on mission)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fɔ̃nì</td>
<td>fɔ̃nì</td>
<td>‘guard, watch over’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tàyàⁿ – tǐnɛ̀ – tǐgɛ̀ⁿ</td>
<td>tàyàⁿ – tǐnɛ̀</td>
<td>‘ignite, light (fire)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ́mànì</td>
<td>tɔ́mànì</td>
<td>‘measure; doubt’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ̀rɛ̀</td>
<td>tɔ̀rɛ̀</td>
<td>‘set (sth) next to (sth)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ̀rã</td>
<td>tɔ̀rã</td>
<td>‘pinch and twist (sb’s skin)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>tɔ̀yɔ́</td>
<td>‘char, burn to a crisp’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʊ̀nɔ́</td>
<td>tʊ̀nɔ́</td>
<td>‘learn or teach (a trade)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mìyɔ̀nɔ́</td>
<td>mìyɔ̀nɔ́</td>
<td>‘pacify (weeping child)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. HL-toned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monosyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɛ́</td>
<td>tɛ́</td>
<td>‘put (pot) up on fire’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tɛ́ⁿ</td>
<td>tɛ́ⁿ</td>
<td>‘become bitter-tasting’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cɔ́nì</td>
<td>cɔ́nì</td>
<td>‘collect, gather together’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dɔ́yã</td>
<td>dɔ́yã</td>
<td>‘marry (sb)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dã́lò</td>
<td>dã́lò</td>
<td>‘feed (sb)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pã́ŋã</td>
<td>pã́ŋã</td>
<td>‘taste’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔ́kö́n</td>
<td>sɔ́kö́n</td>
<td>‘bark (v)’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sʊ̀nã</td>
<td>sʊ̀nã</td>
<td>‘bump, head-butt’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyllabic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fɔ́rɔ́mã</td>
<td>fɔ́rɔ́mã</td>
<td>‘greet’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. H-toned

- **dúrú**
  - *dúrú*
  - ‘skim (water) from top’
- **pá**
  - *pá*
  - ‘scoop out (e.g. sauce)’
- **péné**
  - *péné*
  - ‘comb’ (< Fr. peigner)
- **yáyá**
  - *yáyá*
  - ‘squeeze, press’

Some other verbs initially appeared to belong to this verb type, but further study revealed a distinct form (usually perfective). We suspect that there is a process underfoot whereby aspect-marked forms of less common verbs are beginning to neutralize. The sign of this is usually that one variant is limited to the perfective, while another is imperfective but can spill into perfective functions.

Cases like those in (88) above are distinct from those where the verb has a defective paradigm and so does not even have two aspect-marked stems. This is the case with one of the ‘say’ verbs (89a), and expressively iterated stems like that in (89b) that only occur in strongly imperfective contexts.

(89)

a. **jà**
  - ‘say’
  - perfective only
b. **kórú-kórú**
  - ‘grope along’
  - imperfective only

In addition, statives do not mark aspect, so they lack an imperfective-perfective split. This applies both to derived statives (i.e. derived from dynamic verbs) and to defective stative-only (quasi-)verbs (§10.1.2.2).

8.3 **bà and bé ‘come’**

This is the only verb that does not follow the normal distribution of imperfective and perfective stems across the various phrasal inflectional categories (TAMN) as described in the following chapter. The form is **bà** not in those TAMN categories that for other verbs require the perfective stem. It also occurs in several categories that call for the imperfective stem, such as imperative **bà ‘come!’.** The exception is the imperfective with preverbal **wɔ̀ɣɔ̀**, which requires a special form **bé**, as in **ŋ́wɔ̀ɣɔ̀bé** ‘I am coming’. For the **a/e** alternation, also found for the cognate in Tiefo-D, see §2.2.2 above.

8.4 **Imperfective and perfective differ by tone only**

In all cases where the two stems differ only by tone, the perfective is lower in tone than the imperfective. Since the perfective is generally marked, often by suffixes (§8.6), one can think of a tone-dropping process applied to the imperfective to produce the perfective.
One popular pattern for mono- and bisyllabic stems is M\L, affecting both syllables of bisyllabics (90a). The two other patterns are for stems of at least two (usually exactly two) syllables. These are HM\HL (90b) and H\HL (90c), where the nonfinal syllables of the perfective remain H while the final syllable drops to L. The trisyllabics with HM\HL in (90d) are probably of H\HL rather than true HM\HL type, since they are heavy enough to make the third of three H-toned syllables automatically drop a notch.

(90)  imperfective  perfective  gloss

a. M\L
monosyllabic

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gbä</td>
<td>gbà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kā</td>
<td>kà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>klè</td>
<td>klè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngɔⁿ</td>
<td>ngɔⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pā</td>
<td>pà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɔⁿ</td>
<td>sɔⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wā</td>
<td>wà</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

bisyllabic

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jäyà</td>
<td>jäyà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jɔ̀rɔ</td>
<td>jɔ̀rɔ ~ jɔ̀rɔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāyàⁿ</td>
<td>kāyàⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pāyà</td>
<td>pāyà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pɔ̀rē</td>
<td>pɔ̀rē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sāyā</td>
<td>sāyā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sɛ̀rē</td>
<td>sɛ̀rē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāyā</td>
<td>yāyā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

d. HM\HL
bisyllabic

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cõŋè</td>
<td>cõŋè</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mánà</td>
<td>mánà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mínà</td>
<td>mínà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mĩŋ(g)àⁿ</td>
<td>mĩŋ(g)àⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tìŋèⁿ</td>
<td>tìŋèⁿ ~ tìŋèⁿ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

trisyllabic

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gbāyānì</td>
<td>gbāyānì</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.5 Imperfective and perfective differ by vocalic ablaut (at least)

Other verbs distinguish imperfective from perfective by vocalic mutations (ablaut). The two most common subtypes are those where the perfective shifts at least its final vowel to e/e (§8.5.1) and those where it shifts it to a (§8.5.2), but there are also a handful of cases with ɔ (§8.5.3). In bisyllabics, both vowels are affected by vocalic ablaut in some cases, in others only the final vowel is shifted.

Changes in vocalism can also lead to changes in consonants. Alternations involving g and either ɣ or ŋ are especially common. In addition, medial l and r may induce reduction or syncope of a preceding vowel, or they themselves may be zeroed in one of the aspect-marked forms.

Many of the verbs dealt with in the subsections below, under the rubric of vocalic ablaut, also show tonal changes like those that appear in pure form in the preceding section.

The distinction between stem-final a, ɔ, and e/e can be blurred when the verb is transitive, since in this context it is normally followed either by a third person object enclitic (3Sg = o ~ = ɔ, 3Pl = oo ~ = ɔɔ) or by a noun which may be preceded by a vocalic prefix (à ɗ or ò). The vocalic enclitic or prefix normally contracts with the stem-final vowel. The ATR value of the stem vowel dominates, but other features of the contracted vowel are those of the enclitic or suffix vowel. To identify the stem-final vowel of a transitive verb, it is best to elicit combinations of the verb with 1Sg clitic = ŋə or with a personal name. However, we had
some difficulty nailing down final vowels of transitives. There is no comparable difficulty
with intransitive verbs.

8.5.1  Perfective with final e/ɛ

This vocalic mutation is very common. The final vowel, or both vowels of some bisyllabics,
shift(s) in the perfective to e or ɛ, the choice depending on the ATR-harmonic value of the
stem. If the imperfective has only a, its ATR-harmonic value is otherwise covert, and the
perfective brings it out. Variation between a → e and a → ɛ is likely a vestige of an original
distinction between *ʌ (+ATR) and *a (-ATR), which later fell together as a ; see §2.2.2 for
discussion.

Mono- and bisyllabics that shift a to e or ɛ in all syllables (disregarding reduced or
syncopated initial-syllable vowels) are in (91). The cases where imperfective C(L)aCa clearly
becomes perfective C(L)eCe or C(L)ɛCe, so that both vowels mutate, are in (91b), along with
one similar trisyllabic at the end. If we undo likely syncope in blákā\blékè and kláyā\klégè at
the top of (91b), these could also be considered trisyllabic (at least historically). The examples
in (91c) with medial r and those in (91d) with (originally) medial l are probably of the same
type as in (91b), but the original initial vowel is usually reduced to schwa (before r ) and is
syncopated (before l ).

(91)  imperfective  perfective  gloss

a. monosyllabics
  +ATR perfective e
     lâ  lè  ‘gather (things)’
     flâ ~ flâ flê  ‘untie, undo’
  +ATR perfective e, applies to the initial in a verb-verb compound
     lá-báyâ  lê-bâyâ  ‘keep spinning (getting dizzy)’
  -ATR perfective e
     ŋmâ  ŋmê  ‘(baby) suckle’
  -ATR, extra semivowel in perfective before e
     fiⁿ  fyêⁿ  ‘fart (v)’

b. from a…a to e…e or e…ɛ
  +ATR perfective e…e, but see also discussion of (180) below
     blákâ  blékè  ‘be cured, recover from illness’
     kláyâ  klégè  ‘become short(er)’
-ATR perfective e…e

jànà  jèñè  ‘become long(er)’
kábá  kébè  ‘become many; increase’
nänà ~ näràn  nènè ~ nèrèn  ‘make, manufacture; fix’
pámà  pémè  ‘(people) assemble, gather’
săràn  sèrèn  ‘(butter) melt; (sb) waste away’
tàrà  tèrè  ‘collapse’ (cf. tàrà|tèrè ‘ask’)
wàrà  wèrè ~ wàrè  ‘break off a piece of; split (nut)’
yàyà  yàyà ~ yègè  ‘snap, break (twig)’

Trisyllabic +ATR perfective e…e…e

làkárá  lékérè  ‘change’

c. medial r inducing reduction to schwa

+ATR perfective …e
tàrà  tèrè  ‘ask (sb, to do sth)’
-ATR perfective …e

bórà  bórè  ‘sweep’
dórà  dórè ~ dërè  ‘divide, rip’
kárá ~ kórà  kórè  ‘pour back and forth’
nóràn ~ nóràn  nènè  ‘wash (clothes)’
tóràn  tórèn  ‘sit down’
yórá  yórè ~ yè  ‘get old’

d. original medial l has induced syncope

+ATR perfective …e

blá  blè  ‘carry (baby, sack) on back’
flá ~ flè  flè  ‘untie’
glá  glè  ‘take out’
klá  klè  ‘shell (e.g. peanuts); hatch (egg)’
plá  plè  ‘jab; puncture’
-ATR perfective …e

klán  klèn  ‘tilt’

-ATR perfective …e, syncope optional after m

mélán ~ mélèn  mélèn ~ mélèn  ‘show, indicate’

The bi- and trisyllabics in (92) limit the vowel mutation to the final syllable, even when all vowels in the imperfective are a. Most of the trisyllabics (and a few bisyllabics) end in la|le, which may be a frozen derivational suffix.
(92)  imperfective  perfective  gloss

a. bisyllabic with final a to e/e

-ATR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jínà</td>
<td>jínè</td>
<td>‘kick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jūŋà</td>
<td>jūŋè</td>
<td>‘speak, talk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n̄írá^a</td>
<td>n̄íré^a</td>
<td>‘stand, stop; (rain) cease’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>píŋà</td>
<td>píŋè</td>
<td>‘wake up’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>túrá^a</td>
<td>túrè^a</td>
<td>‘(skin) peel off (after burning)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ATR CaCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pālà</td>
<td>pālè</td>
<td>‘forget about (sb, sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wálá</td>
<td>wálè</td>
<td>‘(sth) dry off’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ATR, other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>córà ~ círà</td>
<td>círè</td>
<td>‘look at’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cónà</td>
<td>cónè</td>
<td>‘cook (meal)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúgāu</td>
<td>dúgè</td>
<td>‘become heavy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jólà</td>
<td>jólè</td>
<td>‘sleep (v)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōlā ~ kōrā</td>
<td>kōlè ~ kōrè</td>
<td>‘turn out well, become good’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kūlā</td>
<td>kūlè</td>
<td>‘(baby) crawl’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n̄ínà ~ n̄írá^a</td>
<td>n̄íné ~ n̄írè^a</td>
<td>‘accept, take possession of’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n̄ūnà</td>
<td>n̄ūnè</td>
<td>‘groan’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīrā ~ fīrè</td>
<td>fīrè ~ fīrè</td>
<td>‘(day) break’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fūrā ~ fūrè</td>
<td>fūrè ~ fūrè</td>
<td>‘carry on head’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tūgāu</td>
<td>tūgè</td>
<td>‘become big(ger)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wūlāu</td>
<td>wūlè</td>
<td>‘flip, turn over (calabash)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. trisyllabics

-ATR, CaCaCa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>p̄āyāmā</td>
<td>p̄āyāmè</td>
<td>‘become sour’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-ATR, other

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>f̄āyōmā</td>
<td>f̄āyōmè</td>
<td>‘become light(er), lose weight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s̄ōrōbāu</td>
<td>s̄ōrōbè</td>
<td>‘squat’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t̄úgūnāu</td>
<td>t̄úgūnè</td>
<td>‘blink (eyes)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ATR, CaCaLa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>j̄áyālāu</td>
<td>j̄áyālè</td>
<td>‘(chicken) push (debris) aside with feet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k̄āyālāu</td>
<td>k̄āyālè</td>
<td>‘ruin, damage (sth)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p̄āyālāu</td>
<td>p̄āyālè</td>
<td>‘entrust’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s̄āyālāu</td>
<td>s̄āyālè</td>
<td>‘lay out; set out to dry’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s̄ȳślā</td>
<td>s̄ȳślè</td>
<td>‘fear, be afraid’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The verbs in (93a) have a medial velar. There are alternations opposing ɣ between two a or ø vowels in the imperfective, versus either g or, in nasalized environments, ŋ after i. The verb sb³n\sùŋɛ̀ ‘work’ (§8.6.2.2) may have formerly been of a similar type but with u instead of i.

The verbs in (93b), by contrast, have stable ŋ.

(93) imperfective perfective gloss

a. " alternating with ɣ and/or with ŋ (cf. §2.1, §2.6.7)
   - dàɣâⁿ  ìðìsèⁿ  ‘be sweet, pleasing’
   - dòɣò  ìðì  ‘follow’
   - dòɣò  ìðì  ‘hear’
   - dûgâⁿ  ùû  dûŋù  dûŋɛ̀  ‘become angry’
   - fàɣâⁿ  ìðìsèⁿ  fûŋɛ̀  ‘shout’
   - nàɣâⁿ  ìû  ‘pay (sb)’
   - sàɣâⁿ  ìðìsèⁿ  ‘apply, rub on (oil)’

b. stable ŋ
   - dûŋâ  dûŋɛ̀  ‘lick’
   - fûŋâ  fûŋɛ̀  ‘whiten, become white or clean’

8.5.2 Perfective with final a

This is the other common vocalic mutation. For some monosyllabic verbs, imperfective Cv changes to Ca (94a). Those of the form Ci, however, have perfective Cya as the high vowel is desyllabified. There are isolated cases of Cu → Cwa and of Ce → Cya (94c). In two verbs of Cu and Co shape where C is velar k, the expected #kwa fuses into kpa with labial velar [kpa] (94d). The Cv imperfectives in (94e) have bisyllabic perfectives Ciya, or in one case Cuwa ~ Ca. Finally, ‘fall’ in (94f) goes from Co to Cuga. Overall, these forms suggest that a can be considered as a perfective suffix rather than as an ablaut mutation.
(94) imperfective perfective gloss

a. tú tâ ‘slash earth (with pick-hoe)’
wú wā ‘die’
dù dâ ‘sow (seeds), plant’
ɲē nā ‘see’
ɲā nā ‘drink’
sē sā ‘go’
tú yē tá yè ‘bury (sth)’ (compound verb)

b. fīⁿ fyāⁿ ‘(seed) germinate’
pīⁿ pyāⁿ ‘extinguish (fire)’
fí fyā ‘become dizzy’
fí fyā ‘be born’ or ‘urinate’
fíⁿ fyāⁿ ‘wait’
fíⁿ fyāⁿ ‘weave; braid’

c. fô fwâ ‘say’
pēⁿ pyāⁿ ~ pyēⁿ ‘stay’

d. kō kpā ‘hit; kill’
kú kpâ ‘cut’

e. dē diyà ‘do’
dí diyâ ‘eat (meal)’
fí fîyâ ‘take, receive’
dîⁿ dûwâⁿ ~ dâⁿ ‘bite’

f. só sûgâ ‘fall’

Other examples of shift to final a in the perfective are bisyllabics (no trisyllabics are attested). Those in (95a) and the Cvrv verbs in (95b) are more or less regular, except for sporadic shifts from Cvrv to Cvy in the imperfective (§2.6.5).

(95) imperfective perfective gloss

a. fyēⁿ fyāⁿ ‘lean on; hold by squeezing’
mâⁿâ ~ mâyⁿ mâⁿ ‘winnow by shaking’
mîyêⁿ mîyâⁿ ‘burn; roast’
pîní pînâ ~ pîrâⁿ ‘(sth) cool off’ or ‘moisten’
In (96a-b), however, in addition to the same sporadic shift to imperfective Cyv, r in the imperfective is replaced by l in the perfective. In most such stems, expected #Cvla syncopates to Cla (96a), but in one example Cvla does surface without Syncope (96b).

(96) imperfective perfective gloss

a. bêy  blà  ‘get tired; ripen, be cooked’
   bôrû  blà  ‘be wrong’
   fôrê  flà  ‘cover; shut (door)’
   gûrû ~ gôrû  glà  ‘go out; depart, leave (a place)’
   kôrû  klà  ‘touch’
   kôrû  klà  ‘chew’ (synonym kâ\kà)
   mëy  mlà  ‘swell up; inflate’
   pôy  plà  ‘succeed (in doing)’
   fôy  flà  ‘become smooth; become powdery’

b. sîrî  sîlà  ‘be/do long time’

8.5.3 Perfective with final ɔ

A small number of verbs have perfectives with final ɔ shifted from imperfective o (97a) or u (97b). ‘Tie’ and ‘find’ have homophonous perfectives.
imperfective  perfective  gloss

a.  bó   bwɔ́  ‘tie; braid’

b.  bú   bwɔ́  ‘find, obtain’
    súgú  sɔ́ɣɔ́  ‘catch; hold’
    súgú  dɔ́ɣɔ́  dɔ́ɣɔ́  ‘help (to do sth)’ (compound verb)

8.6  Verbs with a perfective suffix

This section presents verbs that have a syllabic perfective suffix. Three basic types can be distinguished. One has -là (variants -rà and in nasal environments -nà), another has -bà, and a third has -mà. The fact that these suffixes are all of the shape -Cà makes one wonder whether the verbs with apparent mutation of the stem-final vowel to a (§8.5.2 above) might reflect a *-Cà suffix whose consonant has been lost.

8.6.1  Perfective -là ~ -rà or -nà

8.6.1.1  -là ~ -rà after unnasalized stem

The most common variant in this group is -là. For some verbs it is heard as -rà, and our two principal informants sometimes disagreed on which liquid was correct. The tone and segmental form are carried over from the imperfective.

(98a) shows -là or -rà after monosyllabic stems. (98b) has bisyllabics. Perfective bí-là for ‘ask’ in (98b) is probably contracted from *bírí-là.

imperfective  perfective  gloss

a.  monosyllabic
    byé   byé-rà ~ byé-là  ‘cultivate (a field); whistle’
    fɔ́  fɔ́-là  ‘winnow in wind’
    fɔ́wɔ́  fɔ́wɔ́-là  ‘blow’
    jɔ́  jɔ́-là  ‘have fun’
    jɔ́  jɔ́-là  ‘sell; add’
    jú  jú-là  ‘dance (v)’
    kpá  kpá-là  ‘weep, cry’
    là  là-rà  ‘believe’
    tú  tů-là  ‘dig’
    wɔ́  wɔ́-là  ‘do the follow-up harvest’
Some bi- or trisyllabic verbs of this class have a rising tone pattern (99a-b) that is not found with verb stems of the invariant, tone-lowering, or final-vowel mutating classes described above. These may all be borrowings, especially (99a-b,e), and compounds, especially (99c-d). In compounds, both elements may show separate perfective ablaut.
8.6.1.2 Perfective -nà after nasalized stem

A number of mono- and bisyllabic verbs have perfective suffix -nà. In most cases the unsuffixed imperfective is nasalized (Nv or Cvⁿ). This indicates that -nà is the form taken by -là after a nasal syllable. Monosyllabics are in (100a), bisyllabics in (100b).

(100) imperfective perfective gloss

a. monosyllabic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Perfective</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>báⁿ</td>
<td>bá-nà</td>
<td>‘save (sb)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>čiⁿ</td>
<td>čí-nà</td>
<td>‘pull, drag’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>číⁿ</td>
<td>čí-nà ~ čí-ràⁿ</td>
<td>‘become small(er)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dàⁿ</td>
<td>dà-nà</td>
<td>‘arrive’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gbáⁿ</td>
<td>gbá-nà</td>
<td>‘sew’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàⁿ</td>
<td>kà-nà</td>
<td>‘reap (with sickle)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kpáⁿ</td>
<td>kpá-nà</td>
<td>‘scrape, scratch’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>màⁿ</td>
<td>mà-nà</td>
<td>‘laugh (v)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nàⁿ</td>
<td>nà-nà</td>
<td>‘stone-grind; crush’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>náⁿ</td>
<td>ná-nà</td>
<td>‘tend (livestock)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pàⁿ</td>
<td>pà-nà</td>
<td>‘clear (a field)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáⁿ ~ s3ⁿ</td>
<td>sà-nà</td>
<td>‘sort (grains)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. bisyllabic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Perfective</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fíⁿt³ⁿ</td>
<td>fíⁿt³-nà</td>
<td>‘shut up, be quiet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāyāⁿ</td>
<td>kāyā-nà</td>
<td>‘encounter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kàrärⁿ</td>
<td>kàrär-nà</td>
<td>‘read’ (also kàrärⁿ, kàrē-nà)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māyšⁿ</td>
<td>māyš-nà</td>
<td>‘suck’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nānĩ</td>
<td>nānĩ-nà</td>
<td>‘pester, annoy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nùnũ</td>
<td>nùnũ-nà</td>
<td>‘murmur’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*loanword with unusual tone alternation*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Perfective</th>
<th>Gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kiriⁿ</td>
<td>kiri-nà</td>
<td>‘lose consciousness’ (&lt; Jula)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.6.2 Verbs with apparently truncated imperfectives

In a small number of verbs, it appears that the imperfective lost a final syllable due to sound shifts (deletion of medial nasal or *l*), resulting in the synchronic appearance that the perfective has a suffix.
8.6.2.1 \(fyá\)\(^n\)\(fyénè\) ‘lie down’

How this verb fits into verb classes is unclear. To take the \(nè\) as a variant of suffix \(-nà\) is one possibility, but the vocalism of both syllables would then be irregular. Etymologically there may have been a stem-medial \(n\) in the imperfective that has dropped (*\(fyáná\) ), in which case this would be a vowel-mutating verb with perfective CeCe, see (91b) in §8.5.1 above.

8.6.2.2 \(sɔ̀\)\(^n\)\(sùŋè\) ~ \(sùŋà\) ‘work’

This verb also appears to have lost a medial nasal or possibly \(*y\) in the imperfective. The shift in vowel quality (\(ɔ\) versus \(u\)) resembles those between \(a\) or \(\circ\) and \(i\) in some Cvg/\(gy\) stems with medial velar, such as \(dɔy̞d̞\)\(d̞i\)\(d̞è\) ‘follow’ and other examples in (93a) in §8.5.1 above. One might therefore reconstruct the imperfective as bisyllabic \(*sɔ̞y̞ɔ̞\) or \(*sɔ̞ŋɔ̞\).

This verb is regularly collocated with cognate nominal \(sɔ̞ɛ̞ɛ̞\)\(^n\) ‘work (n)’.

8.6.2.3 \(tú\)\(^l\)\(túlè\) ‘spit’

In this verb, it would seem that a medial \(l\) has been dropped in the imperfective (*\(túlύ\) ). Depending on what final vowel we reconstruct (e.g. *\(túlά\) or *\(túlέ\) ) this would be a tone-only alternation (§8.4). A complicating factor is that \(tú\) (more than \(túlè\) ) is onomatopoeically “correct” for this sense.

8.6.2.4 \(nɔ̀r\)\(^n\)\(nɔ̀y\)\(^n\)\(nɔ̀nɔ\) ~ \(nɔ̀rɔ̀\) ‘expel’

For ‘expel, drive out, chase away’, \(nɔ̀r\)\(^n\) and \(nɔ̀y\) are attested as imperfective and \(nɔ̀nɔ\) or \(nɔ̀rɔ̀\) as perfective. Given that some bisyllables with nasals have perfective suffix \(-nà\) ~ \(-rà\) (§8.6.1.2), there is a possibility that the perfective of ‘expel’ was originally suffixed \(*nɔ̀rɔ̀-nà\). However, this could alternatively just be another case of alternation of \(n\) and \(r\).

8.6.3 Perfective \(-bà\) or \(-mà\)

These perfective suffixes are usually related to each other as nonnasal (oral) versus nasal, like \(-lά\) versus \(-nά\) as described in §8.6.1 above.
8.6.3.1 Perfective -bà after unnasalized stem

None of the stems that take -bà in the perfective are nasalized, so there is clear basis for the contrast between it and -mà (see the following section). Verbs with -bà include a few monosyllabics with back rounded vowel (101a), one of which (‘end’) shifts to a before the suffix. There are several bisyllabics, several of which end in a high vowel (101b). HM flattens to HH before the suffix (§2.7.2.3); see ‘fight’ and ‘gin’ in (101b).

(101) imperfective   perfective   gloss

a. monosyllabic

stable vowel and tone

\textit{só}   \textit{só-bà}   ‘pound (sth) in mortar’
\textit{yó}   \textit{yó-bà}   ‘become black; (night) fall’
\textit{t̩}   \textit{t̩-bà}   ‘hide (oneself)’

stable vowel but tone is lowered

\textit{yó}   \textit{yó-bà}   ‘forge (blade)’
\textit{yó důnú} (~ důrũ”)   \textit{yó-bà důnú} (~ důrũ”)   ‘knock down’

shifting vowel

\textit{k̩̄~ kw̩̄}   \textit{k̩̄-bà}   ‘end, be used up’

b. bisyllabic

**HM becoming HH-L**

\textit{dáy̩}   \textit{dáy̩-bà}   ‘fight, quarrel’
\textit{tó̩r̩i~ t̩̄r̩i}   \textit{tó̩r̩i-bà~ t̩̄r̩i-bà}   ‘gin (cotton)’

other verbs (tones stable)

\textit{f̩̄̊r̩̄}   \textit{f̩̄̊r̩̄-bà}   ‘steal’ or ‘knead (dough)’
\textit{f̩̄̊r̩i}   \textit{f̩̄̊r̩i-bà}   ‘sneeze’
\textit{t̩̄r̩i}   \textit{t̩̄r̩i-bà}   ‘rub on (sth)’
\textit{t̩̄r̩i~ t̩̄u}   \textit{t̩̄r̩u-bà}   ‘hunt fish, go fishing’
\textit{ȳ̩r̩i}   \textit{ȳ̩r̩i-bà}   ‘shape into a ball’

irregular (-bà spreading into imperfective)

\textit{t̩̄r̩i-bà~ t̩̄r̩i}   \textit{t̩̄r̩i-bà}   ‘(sb) slip’

**Cvy imperfective (probably < *Cvrv)**

\textit{p̩̄y}   \textit{p̩̄r̩e̩-bà, p̩̄y-bà}   ‘lean shoulder against (wall)’
\textit{w̩̄y}   \textit{w̩̄y-bà}   ‘cough (v)’
8.6.3.2  Perfective -mà after nasalized stem

In most cases, the suffix -mà occurs with verbs whose imperfective is nasalized, whether monosyllabic (102a) or bisyllabic (102b). However, there are also two verbs whose imperfectives end in oral i (102c). This raises the suspicion that this vowel was formerly nasalized in those verbs. In the case of ‘beat (tomtom)’, this is confirmed by Tiefo-D (bèⁿ|blìⁿ|bleⁿ). In the case of ‘return’ it is not (Tiefo-D klá|klá|kli).

(102) imperfective perfective gloss

a. monosyllabic
   nɔ́  nɔ́-mà  ‘become thin’
   sáⁿ  sá-mà  ‘thresh; beat’

b. bisyllabic
   HM becoming HH-L
   géréⁿ ~ góréⁿ ~ géyⁿ  géré-mà  ‘stir w. stick’ or ‘spin (thread)’
   máyāⁿ  máyā-mà  ‘roll up’
   other verbs (tones stable)
   būgūⁿ  būgū-mà  ‘look for’
   fíríⁿ ~ fírīⁿ ~ fíńī  fírí-mà ~ fíńi-mà  ‘think about’
   kényⁿ  kéré-mà ~ kéké-mà  ‘ascend, go up’
   nûgûⁿ ~ nûŋû  nûgû-mà ~ nûũ-mà  ‘press (oil, juice); choke’
   nûjàⁿ  nûjà-mà  ‘squeeze; draw (milk)’
   nɔ́ršⁿ  nɔ́rš-mà  ‘fold, bend, curve, twist’
   sìgìⁿ  sìgì-mà  ‘run’
   tàyâⁿ ~ tîh̩e ~ tìgèⁿ  tìgi-mà  ‘(light) shine; flash’

   c. bōří  bōří-mà  ‘roll along; beat (tomtom)’
   kōří  kōří-mà  ‘go back; spin, turn’

One observation is that the medial g/ŋ alternation in imperfectives seems to be avoided in the perfective, which is attested only with g, see ‘run’ and ‘shine’, perhaps also ‘press’, in (102b). In other words, the suffixal m absorbs the nasalization of the stem.

8.7  Suppletion (jà|dè ‘happen’)

The intransitive verb ‘happen, occur, take place’ is at least synchronically suppletive with imperfective já and perfective dè (§10.2.3). The case for an original nonsuppletive verb
whose two stems have diverged by sound changes is based on the phonetic proximity of \textit{j} and \textit{d}, and the vocalism which follows the \textit{a/e} pattern found with many verbs (§8.5.1). On the other hand, L-toned imperfectives are not normally paired with M-toned perfectives, and a \textit{j/d} split would be more plausible with \textit{j} before a front vowel and \textit{d} before a back or low vowel, rather than the opposite.

This ‘become’ verb may be related to transitive \textit{dē} \textit{diyà} ‘do’.

Another \textit{jā}, also suppletive but this time perfective, is one of the ‘say’ verbs (§10.1.6).

Another \textit{dē}, possibly related historically, occurs in a possessive predicate construction; see (151) in §10.2.5.2.
The previous chapter showed that each nonstative verb has two forms at word level, imperfective (relatively unmarked) and perfective (relatively marked). At phrase-level, these word forms combine with preceding grammatical particles to express the following categories:

(103) a. indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>perfective negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>imperfective</td>
<td>imperfective negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>future negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. modal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>imperative</th>
<th>prohibitive (imperative negative)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hortative</td>
<td>hortative negative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The indicative inflections also have pronominal-subject conjugations, expressed by proclitics (optionally replaced by independent pronouns).

A schematic summary of the distribution of imperfective (Ipfv) and perfective (Pfv) stems within the phrase-level inflections and the productive deverbal derivations is Table 1. Given the use of the “perfective” form of the verb in the future, the labels “perfective” and “imperfective” for the verb-stem alternation are oversimplified.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>perfective</td>
<td>Pfv</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperfective</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>progressive</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>Pfv</td>
<td>Pfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hortative</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive, §3.1.4</td>
<td>Ipfv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agentive, §3.1.3</td>
<td>Pfv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Use of perfective & imperfective verb stems
The subject pronominals used in positive and negative inflections are summarized in (104) below, excluding cases where 1Sg ŋ́ and 2Sg ŋ̀ are deleted by (morpho-)phonological rule before the initial nasal of a negative marker. 2Pl shows a minor tonal change from positive to negative. 3Sg and 3Pl show suppletion, and 3Sg kà in negatives replaces three distinct class-marked positive pronominals. The “negative” forms are also optionally used in the future positive.

(104) pronominal subject proclitic in perfective positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>All</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>é</td>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ̀</td>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā</td>
<td>nà</td>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>kà</td>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>kà</td>
<td>3SgA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē</td>
<td>kà</td>
<td>3SgE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ō</td>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ́~wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3Pl pre-negative wɔ̀ɣɔ́~wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ are not free variants, rather there is some ambiguity as to which one is underlyingly correct. wɔ̀ɣɔ́ is the 3Pl perfective negative portmanteau; one can argue whether the final H-tone is due to contraction from e.g. /wɔ̀ɣɔ́ kà/ or whether it is an intrinsic part of the 3Pl morpheme. In 3Pl negative wɔ̀ɣɔ́ máⁿ and related forms, either wɔ̀ɣɔ́ or wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ could be the underlying form because of the LH#H-to-LL#H tone sandhi process.

All simple negative clauses end in a clause-final negative enclitic =ʔ. It is therefore hosted by the verb if there is no postverbal constituent. If there is a postverbal object or PP the enclitic is hosted by the final word.

9.1 Perfective

The perfective expresses events that are conceptualized as completed (bounded), generally in the past.

9.1.1 Perfective positive

The perfective positive is expressed by the perfective stem of the verb, with no inflectional particles. The stem is preceded by a nonpronominal subject NP or, in its absence, by a pronominal-subject proclitic (105), with no intervening inflectional morpheme.
Perfective positive paradigm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1Sg</th>
<th>1Pl</th>
<th>2Sg</th>
<th>2Pl</th>
<th>3SgHum, 3SgO</th>
<th>3SgA</th>
<th>3SgE</th>
<th>3Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ŋ́</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĕ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ̀</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ń        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ń        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ń        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
<td>ŋ̀        ŋ̀</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few examples are in (106). Observe the three-way tonal distinction between 1Sg ŋ́ (reduced from ṁ́), 2Sg ŋ̀ (reduced from independent m̀), and 3Sg ŋ̀.

(106) ‘got up’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>perfective positive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>ŋ́ yígà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP (Zaki)</td>
<td>zákí yígà</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.1.2 Perfective negative

After a nonpronominal subject, the preverbal perfective negative particle is kàá in careful pronunciation, but it is usually shortened to ká (phonetically sometimes kā without a clearly contoured pitch). The same form, beginning with k, is heard when the subject is a 3Sg pronoun (in this paradigm, zero). After a pronominal-subject proclitic that ends in a vowel or that consists of a nasal, the initial k is pronounced g or is elided entirely.

(107) perfective negative

| ŋ́ (g)à ~ ŋ́ (g)à(á) | 1Sg       |
| ŋ́ (g)à ~ ę́ (g)à(á) | 1Pl       |
| ŋ́ (g)à ~ ŋ́ (g)à(á) | 2Sg       |
| nà gà ~ nà gàá      | 2Pl       |
| kà ~ kàá            | 3Sg (all classes) |
| wɔ́yɔ́             | 3Pl       |
Before an H-tone, the LH-toned negative particle (or a reduction thereof) drops to L-toned. Thus *kà bà-ʔ* ‘he/she didn’t come’ with LH-toned particle, but *kà yìgí-ʔ* ‘he/she did not get up’. This is also the case with the 3Pl portmanteau: *wòyò bà-ʔ* ‘they didn’t come’, but *wòyò yìgí-ʔ* ‘they did not get up’. The L-toned variant *wòyò* is homophonous with progressive (positive) inflectional morpheme *wòyò* (§9.2.1 below). Aside from the final glottal stop in negative, the two can be distinguished since the 3Pl perfective negative *wòyò ~ wòyò* includes a pronominal subject and is therefore not preceded by a subject NP or pronoun, while imperfective *wòyò* is always preceded by a subject (such as 3Sg ḋ or 3Pl ō). Compare the three combinations in (108) that include *wòyò*.

(108) Selected pronominal-subject forms of ‘get up’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>perfective negative</th>
<th>imperfective positive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3SgHum</td>
<td>kà yìgí-ʔ</td>
<td>ḋ wòyò yìgí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>wòyò yìgí-ʔ</td>
<td>ō wòyò yìgí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP (Zaki)</td>
<td>zàkì kà yìgí-ʔ</td>
<td>zàkì wòyò yìgí</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2 Imperfective

There is a simple imperfective without a special inflectional particle. It is distinct from the future and from the progressive, both of which do involve inflectional morphemes.

9.2.1 Simple imperfective

The imperfective form of the verb stem may directly follow the subject to constitute an imperfective used as a general present (habitual or continuous).

(109) a. ḋ sòⁿ [ḥ y sà̀jìⁿ] sǽmiyàʔàn  
1Sg work(v) [Pref work(n)] Bobo  
‘I work in Bobo Dioulasso.’

b. zàkì fàⁿ  
Z lie.down.lpfv here  
‘Zaki sleeps here (regularly).’

The progressive rather than the simple imperfective is used in some contexts where the English simple present (*he runs*) would be used.
9.2.2 Imperfective negative (máⁿ)

The imperfective negative morpheme is máⁿ. Its pronominal paradigm is (110). The initial 1Sg ŋ́ and 2Sg ŋ̀ are usually not heard. The distinction is made instead by the tones of the negative morpheme; we can think of the pronominals as having been reduced to floating H and L tones that dock on the negative morpheme. As in other negative paradigms, special forms are used for third person pronouns: 3Sg kà (for all noun classes) and 3Pl wɔ́yɔ́.

(110) Imperfective negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg</th>
<th>Paradigm</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>máⁿ (&lt; ŋ́ máⁿ)</td>
<td>é máⁿ yá yá máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>máⁿ</td>
<td>nd máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1PlIncl</td>
<td>yá máⁿ</td>
<td>yá máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>máⁿ (&lt; ŋ̀ máⁿ)</td>
<td>nd máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>kà máⁿ</td>
<td>kà máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg (all classes)</td>
<td>wɔ́yɔ́ máⁿ</td>
<td>wɔ́yɔ́ máⁿ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>máⁿ</td>
<td>máⁿ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb takes the morphological imperfective form.

(111) a. kà máⁿ fýáⁿ

3Sg IpfvNeg lie.down.Ipfv

‘He/She doesn’t sleep (here)’

b. máⁿ bárá = ?

1Sg.IpfvNeg sweep.Ipfv=Neg

‘I don’t sweep.’

c. wɔ́yɔ́ máⁿ bárá = ?

3Pl IpfvNeg sweep.Ipfv=Neg

‘They don’t sweep.’

máⁿ is (marginally) distinguishable from progressive negative máyàⁿ ~ máⁿ (§9.3.2). However, máyàⁿ itself is likely a fusion of máⁿ with another morpheme; see (115) below.
9.3 **Progressive**

The progressive is somewhat more general than the English progressive, but is constrained by the imperfective (normal in habitual present contexts) and the future.

9.3.1 **Progressive positive**

The progressive positive is expressed by the inflectional morpheme *wɔ̀ɣɔ̀* preceding the verb, which takes its imperfective form. The subject (either a nonpronominal NP or a pronominal-subject proclitic) precedes *wɔ̀ɣɔ̀*. Examples are (112a-b).

(112) a. *zàkí wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ sē / yígí*
   Z     Prog     go.Ipfv / get.up.Ipfv
   ‘Zaki is going / is getting up.’

   b. *ŋ́ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ bárā*
   1Sg     Prog     sweep.Ipfv
   ‘I am sweeping.’

The pronominal-subject paradigm is (113). The class-marked *ē wɔ̀ɣɔ̀* does not seem to be used frequently; E-class nouns may take the A-class form. There is an optional suppletive 1Sg subject form *ɲáɣàⁿ*, cf. independent pronoun form *ɲí*.

(113) **Progressive positive**

\[
\begin{align*}
   ĕ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & ~ ñáɣàⁿ & 1Sg \\
   ē wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 1Pl \\
   ŋ̄ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 2Sg \\
   nā wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 2Pl \\
   ŋ̄ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 3SgHum, 3SgO \\
   ŋ̄ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 3SgA \\
   ē wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 3SgE \\
   ŋ̄ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ & & 3Pl \\
\end{align*}
\]

The examples below distinguish progressive *wɔ̀ɣɔ̀* (114a-b) from 3Pl perfective negative *wɔ̀ɣɔ́*, which becomes *wɔ̀ɣɔ̀* by tone sandhi in (114c). As mentioned earlier, one can parse correctly by observing the presence/absence of clause-final negative enclitic *ʔ*, and by noting the absence of a distinct preverbal subject in (114c).
(114)  a. ŋ̄ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ yígí
    3Sg     Prog   get.up.Ipfv
    ‘He/She gets up.’

    b. ō wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ yígí
    3Pl     Prog   get.up.Ipfv
    ‘They get up.’

    c. wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ yígí-ʔ
    3Pl.PfvNeg get.up.Ipfv=Neg
    ‘They didn’t get up.’

9.3.2 Progressive negative

The full form of the progressive negative has máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀, consisting of imperfective negative máⁿ and progressive wɔ̀ɣɔ̀. There are various assimilated and contracted variants: máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀, máyàⁿ, and mɔ́ɣɔ̀ⁿ.

The pronominal proclitics that combine with máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ have the same forms as in the (simple) imperfective negative, including the special negative variants of the 3Sg and 3Pl pronouns. The 2Pl proclitic is L-toned. The 2Sg subject form is máyàⁿ with the L-tone of 2Sg /ṃ/ expressed on the first syllable of /máyàⁿ/, pushing the latter’s H-tone to its final syllable.

The pronominal paradigm is (115), showing full and contracted variants.

(115)  Progressive negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>full form</th>
<th>contracted</th>
<th>category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ŋ́) máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>(ŋ́) máyàⁿ</td>
<td>1Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>é máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>é máyàⁿ</td>
<td>1PlExcl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yááá máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>yááá máyàⁿ</td>
<td>1PlIncl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máyáⁿ</td>
<td></td>
<td>2Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>nà máyàⁿ</td>
<td>2Pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kà máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>kà máyàⁿ~kà mɔ́ɣɔ̀ⁿ</td>
<td>3Sg (all classes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ máyàⁿ</td>
<td>3Pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP máⁿ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀</td>
<td>NP máyàⁿ</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb takes its morphological imperfective form. A few examples are in (116). After 1Sg independent pronoun ní (not the proclitic), the negative morpheme is L-toned máyàⁿ (116b).
The contracted forms in paradigm (115) above, but with the perfective rather than imperfective stem of the verb, function as future negative (§9.4.2, below).

9.3.3 Past progressive

A past progressive is expressed by adding past particle tì between the subject and the progressive morpheme wòyɔ (117a). This shifts the temporal point with respect to which the eventuality is compared to some point in the past. tì wòyɔ is negated as tì má wòyɔ, which is often contracted phonetically to [tìm ɔ́ɣɔ̀ⁿ].

(117) a. zàkí tì wòyɔ bárā
    Z Past Prog sweep.Ipfv
    ‘Zaki was sweeping.’

b. zàkí tì má wòyɔ bárā = ?
    Z Past IpfvNeg Prog sweep.Ipfv=Neg
    ‘Zaki was not sweeping.’

For past progressives in backgrounded temporal adverbial clauses, see §13.4.1.

9.4 Future

9.4.1 Future positive

The future positive morpheme is bi after a nonpronominal subject NP. The pronominal subject paradigm is (118) below, where orthographic ñ bi (omitting the tones) is pronounced [mbi]. The verb takes the perfective (not imperfective!) form. The 3Pl proclitic is wòyɔ rather than ò or ō.

Third person and 2Pl pronominal proclitics have L- rather than M-tone in this paradigm, but after these L-toned proclitics the tone of the inflectional morpheme is raised from bi to bí. In spite of their tonal neutralization, 2Sg ſ and 3Sg ſ are usually (but not always)
distinguished by the addition of an additional particle *a*, found only in the future positive, before the 2Sg proclitic. The particle also frequently appears before 1Sg proclitic *ŋ́*. In both cases, the particle *a* adopts the tone of the following proclitic. Any remaining ambiguities can be resolved by using an independent pronoun instead of a proclitic. In the 3Sg, *kà* (also used in negative paradigms) is more common than *ŋ́*, and for 3SgA and 3SgE the most common form is *kàʕà* with the A-class marker following *kà*.

(118) Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>(á)</em> ŋ́ bí</td>
<td>1Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē bí</td>
<td>1Pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yáýá bí</td>
<td>1Pl inclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(á)</em> ŋ́ bí</td>
<td>2Sg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nà bí</td>
<td>2Pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ŋ́ bí ~ kà bí</td>
<td>3SgHum, 3SgO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>à bí ~ kàʕà bí</td>
<td>3SgA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ē bí ~ kàʕà bí</td>
<td>3SgE (ē bí uncommon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ bí</td>
<td>3Pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP bí</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some examples are in (119).

(119) a. zàkí bí sà
Z    Fut    go.Pfv
‘Zaki will go.’

b. *(á) ŋ́ bí yígà* (Fut) 1Sg Fut get.up.Pfv
‘I will get up.’

c. *(á) ŋ́ bí yígà* (Fut) 2Sg Fut get.up.Pfv
‘You-Sg will get up.’

d. ŋ́ / kà bí yígà
3Sg Fut get.up.Pfv
‘He/She will get up.’
9.4.2 Future negative

The future negative has the same inflectional morpheme *máɣâⁿ* as the progressive negative, see (115) above. Recall that *máɣâⁿ* is often contracted to *mâⁿ* except in careful speech.

(120) Future negative

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
máɣâⁿ & 1\text{Sg} \\
ě máɣâⁿ & 1\text{PlExcl} \\
yáɣá máɣâⁿ & 1\text{PlIncl} \\
máɣâⁿ & 2\text{Sg} \\
ná máɣâⁿ & 2\text{Pl} \\
ká máɣâⁿ & 3\text{Sg (human or nonhuman)} \\
wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ máɣâⁿ & 3\text{Pl} \\
\end{array}
\]

The future negative is distinguished from the progressive negative by the form of the verb stem, which is “perfective” in the future negative (as in the future positive) but “imperfective” in the progressive negative (as in the progressive positive).

(121) Selected pronominal-subject forms of ‘get up’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>future negative</th>
<th>progressive negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>máɣâⁿ yígàʔ</td>
<td>máɣâⁿ yígíʔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>máɣâⁿ yígàʔ</td>
<td>máɣâⁿ yígíʔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ máɣâⁿ yígàʔ</td>
<td>wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ máɣâⁿ yígíʔ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP (Zaki)</td>
<td>zàkí máɣâⁿ yígàʔ</td>
<td>zàkí máɣâⁿ yígíʔ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of the future negative are in (122).

(122) a. sügúnâ zàkí máɣâⁿ sàʔ  
    tomorrow Z FutNeg go.Pfv=Neg  
    ‘Tomorrow Zaki will not go.’

    b. sügúnâ máɣâⁿ bérɛ =ʔ  
    tomorrow 1Sg.FutNeg sweep.Pfv=Neg  
    ‘Tomorrow I will not sweep.’
9.5 Imperative

9.5.1 Imperative positive

The imperative positive for singular addressee consists of the imperfective stem, with no preceding pronominal proclitic or inflectional morpheme. Since the imperfective stem does not otherwise occur in this bare, clause-initial form, it can only be interpreted as imperative.

The imperative positive for plural addressee adds 2Pl nà in L-toned form before the imperfective stem.

(123) gloss    Imprt Sg    Imprt Pl

‘go’         sē            nà sē
‘get up’      yígí          nà yígí
‘fall’        só             nà só

Contrast mid-toned 2Pl nā in indicatives. The tonal distinction nà versus nā is important with verbs like bà ‘come’ (the most common verb in imperatives) that have identical perfective and imperfective stems (124a-b).

(124) a. nā    bà
        2Pl    come.Pfv
     ‘You-Pl came.’

b. nà    bà
        2Pl    come.Ipfv
     ‘Come!-2Pl’

For 2Sg, the difference for verbs like ‘come’ is presence/absence of 2Sg subject proclitic ŋ̀, which is absent from imperatives (125a-b).

(125) a. ŋ̀    bà
        2Sg    come.Pfv
     ‘You-Sg came.’
9.5.2 Imperative negative (prohibitive)

The prohibitive has its own inflectional morpheme bàá, followed by the imperfective stem. There is no overt 2Sg pronominal when the addressee is singular. Plural addressee is marked by preposing L-toned nà, as in the positive imperative. The usual clause-final negative enclitic =ʔ is present; if there is no postverbal constituent it is hosted by the verb.

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{gloss} & \text{Proh Sg} & \text{Proh Pl} \\
\hline
\text{‘go’} & \text{báá sē-ʔ} & \text{nà báá sē-ʔ} \\
\text{‘get up’} & \text{báá yígí-ʔ} & \text{nà báá yígí-ʔ} \\
\text{‘fall’} & \text{báá só-ʔ} & \text{nà báá só-ʔ} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

9.6 Hortative

9.6.1 Positive hortative (é bì)

The hortative (‘let’s VP!’) requires a 1Pl subject. It is expressed by the same particle bì ~ bì found in the future positive. However in the hortative the verb stem is imperfective, versus perfective in the future positive.

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{gloss} & \text{1Pl} & \text{Fut} \\
\hline
\text{‘Let’s go!’} & \text{báá sē-ʔ} & \text{go.Ipfv} \\
\text{‘We will go.’} & \text{báá sà} & \text{go.Pfv} \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

In the hortative, the future particle may be elided, hence é sē ‘let’s go!’ as an alternative to (127a).
9.6.2 Negative hortative (è bàá)

In the negative, the 1Pl proclitic is L-toned, and future bī is replaced by a negative bàá, which may be related to prohibitive bàá.

(128) è bàá sē = ?
    1Pl HortNeg go.Ipfv=Neg
    ‘Let’s not go!’
10 Simple clauses

10.1 Intransitive, transitive, ditransitive

10.1.1 Order of constituents

The basic order is SVO, whether the subject and object are nonpronominal NPs (129a) or pronominals (129b). In the latter case, pronominal objects encliticize to the verb and contract with its final vowel. One could argue that pronominal subjects are proclitic, but they occur in the same linear position as full NPs and they do not interact phonologically with verbs.

(129)  a.  zàkí  də̀rà  [báŋ  j3⁹]
       Z  buy.Pfv  [sheep  two]
       ‘Zaki bought two sheep.’

       b.  ō  kpà = ỹⁿ
            3Pl  hit.Pfv=1Sg
       ‘They hit-Past me.’

10.1.2 Intransitive verbs

Intransitive verbs may be dynamic (active) or stative.

10.1.2.1 Dynamic (active) intransitives

Dynamic (or active) verbs denote events that take place in a time interval. These verbs are compatible with the full set of TAMN constructions, including perfective (130a) and nonperfective categories such as progressive (130b).

(130)  a.  zàkí  yì-rà
       Z  jump.Pfv
       ‘Zaki jumped.’
b. ỳ  wàyà  yì
   1Sg  Prog  jump.Pfv
   ‘I am jumping.’

Some common meteorological and time-of-day combinations are in (131). In most cases the
subject NP expresses the specific sense, while the verb is semantically general and also
occurs in other contexts. ‘(Day) break’ is exceptional in that the verb is not a semantically
general one. Its forms are imperfective 屺á and perfective 屺è. The only phonologically
similar verbs are 屺à (perfective 屺à) ‘become clean’ and 屺à (perfective 屺è) ‘shave’, but
since the tones don’t match even an etymological relationship is questionable.

(131)  a.  [(ò)  bló]  bà
        [(Pref)  rain(n)]  come.Pfv
        ‘It rained.’

b.  [(à)  yèyàʔà]  yígà / ságà
   [Pref]  sun  get.up.Pfv / fall.Pfv
   ‘The sun rose/set.’

c.  bórií  yá-bá
   night  become.black.Pfv
   ‘Night fell.’ (i.e. it got dark out)

d.  [è  tèyⁿ] 屺è
    [Pref  daybreak]  day.break.Pfv
   ‘Day broke.’ (i.e. it became light out just before dawn)

10.1.2.2 Stative intransitives

Some states are expressed by adjectival predicates, on which see §10.1.2.3 below.

Verbs of stance have distinct stative and dynamic forms. The statives combine with .gbó
‘be (somewhere)’ and its past form جة ‘was (somewhere)’, whose main function is described
in §10.2.1. Statives do not distinguish aspect (perfective vs. imperfective). Dynamic ‘stand
up’ in perfective form in (132a) is followed by various tense and polarity forms of its stative
counterpart ‘be standing’ (French être debout).

(132) a.  ò  pârèⁿ
    3Pl  stand.Pfv
    ‘They stood up.’ or ‘They stopped (=came to a halt).’
Dynamic/stative alternations are in (133). For the dynamic verbs, both aspectual stems are shown.

(133)  
dynamic Ipfv  dynamic Pfv  stative  gloss (dynamic)

a. ɲɛ́ráⁿ ɲàrëⁿ ɲínáʔáⁿ gō  ‘stand, stop’
b. tɔ̀rëⁿ tɔ̀rëⁿ tɔ̀ràáⁿ gō  ‘sit down’
c. ʃyáⁿ ʃyé-në ʃyááʔáⁿ gō  ‘lie down’

Other verbs that are intrinsically stative and have no dynamic forms are in (134).

(134)  
a. gō  ‘be/exist (somewhere)’  (§10.2.1), copula (§10.2.2) also part of ‘want’ (§10.3.2) and ‘have’ (§10.2.5.1)  jè  past counterpart of gō
d. ɲṓ  ‘know about, be aware of’  (§10.3.3.2)  kɔ̀ⁿ  ‘know’  (§10.3.3.1)
e. pɔ́yⁿ  ‘can, be able to’  (after another verb/VP)  pùrùⁿ  ‘be able’  (without another verb/VP)
f. bålă  ‘be better’
g. ˈfō  ‘it is necessary (that …)’  (< French il faut ?)
Adjectival predicates

Aside from inchoative verbs (e.g. ‘become big, grow’) which describe transitions, there are two types of stative adjectival predicates (e.g. ‘be big’).

(135) presents a type where the adjective directly follows the subject and no auxiliary is present. The predicative form may be identical, closely related (usually truncated), or unrelated (suppletive) to the modifying form. In this construction the 3Sg subject pronoun is kàʕà (usually reduced to kà).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>modifying</th>
<th>‘3Sg is …’</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. c5&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà c5&quot;</td>
<td>‘… deep’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. tē&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà tē&quot;</td>
<td>‘… bitter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. sərēy&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà sərēy&quot;</td>
<td>‘… long; distant’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sərəw&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sərəy&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. dīy&quot;ā&quot;ā&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà dā&quot;</td>
<td>‘… delicious, sweet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. sāŋgbərāy&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà tū</td>
<td>‘… big’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sāŋgbərāw&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sāŋgbərāā&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. kwɔlā&quot;ā&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà kə</td>
<td>‘… good’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. blákā&quot;</td>
<td>kàʕà blā&quot;</td>
<td>‘… easy, cheap’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regular 1st/2nd person subject proclitics like 1Sg ŋ̣ may also be used when the subject is not 3Sg. The 3Pl subject form is wɔ̀ỵ (wɔ̀ỵ tū ‘they are big’). This pattern is regularly elicited for the adjectives shown. Some adjectives like ‘long’ and ‘big’ have multiple forms as modifiers, reflecting what is left of an old noun-class agreement system, but they have a single predicative form.

In a second construction, gō ‘be (present)’ is the actual predicate, preceded by a distinctive form of the adjective, which in turn is preceded by a regular subject pronoun (not a possessor), here illustrated with 3Sg Nonhuman ă (others include 1Sg ŋ̣ and 3Sg Human ʧ̣).
This looks somewhat like a construction of the type ‘[its redness] exists’ with a possessed
deadjectival nominal as subject. However, the pronominals have subject rather than possessor
form, so at least synchronically the construction is of the type ‘it [red is]’. The adjectives in
(136) were regularly elicited with this construction.

(136) modifying ‘it is …’ gloss

a. fiyà’ák’ à já lá’ák’ gô ‘… red’
   sã’ fiyè’ák’

b. wàyà’ák’ à wàyà’ák’ gô ‘… wide’

c. yóbày’ák’ à yó’w gô ‘… black’
   yóbò
   yóbày

d. wálà’ák’ à wálà’ák’ gô ‘… dry’
   wálåw

e. fiyà’ák’ à fiyèyà’ák’ gô ‘… white’
   fiyèyà’ák’
   fiyà’ák’
   fiyè’ák’

For ‘heavy’, predicates of types (135) and (136) are both attested. In modifying function, this
adjective requires a suffix -må’ák’ also found in fôyò-må’ák’ ‘soft; lightweight’, cf. verb
fôyò-må ‘be soft, lightweight’.

(137) modifying ‘it is …’ gloss

   dugú-må’ák’ à kà’ák’ dugú ‘… heavy’
   à dûwâ’t’ák’

10.1.3 Transitive verbs

These include the usual impact transitives (‘cut’, ‘break’, ‘hit’, ‘kill’ and the like), but also
perception verbs. The object (pronominal or nonpronominal) follows the verb. There is no
accusative marking on nouns, but pronouns have a special set of object enclitics that fuse with the verb.

(138)  
a.  \(\tilde{o} kpà = y^n\)  
3Pl hit.Pfv=1Sg  
‘They hit me.’

b.  \(\tilde{o} pà = y^n\)  
3Pl see.Pfv=1Sg  
‘They saw me.’

If the object is nonpronominal, beginning with a noun, the noun’s vocalic prefix normally fuses with the verb, making segmentation and morphemic analysis difficult. See discussion of examples (65a-d) in §5.2.

10.1.4 Ambi-valent (labile) verbs

In the absence of a productive causative or mediopassive derivation at word level, it is quite normal for a Tiefo-N verb to have both intransitive and transitive uses. That is, many verbs are ambi-valent (labile). The typical pattern is that an external agent is added to the intransitive to create the transitive, cf. English \(X\) broke (‘middle’ or ‘unaccusative’ intransitive) versus \(Y\) broke \(X\). In addition to action verbs like ‘break’, the pattern applies also to some motion verbs.

(139)  
a.  \(\tilde{o} yì-rà\)  
3Pl enter.Pfv  
‘They went in.’

b.  \(\tilde{o} yì-rà = y^n\)  
3Pl enter.Pfv=1Sg  
‘They put/took me in.’

However, some intransitive motion verbs have other ways to generate transitive equivalents. ‘\(X\) bring \(Y\)’ is expressed as ‘\(X\) come [with \(Y\)]’ (140a), and the transitive \(glâ\|glê\) ‘take out’ is distinct from (though irregularly related to) intransitive ‘exit’ \(gúrú ~ gôrû\|glâ\) (140b).

(140)  
a.  \(\tilde{o} bà [nà [\tilde{o} nù]]\)  
3Pl come.Pfv [with [Pref water]]  
‘They brought (the) water.’
10.1.5 Ditransitive two-verb combinations (‘give’, ‘show’)

‘Give’ is expressed primarily by the verb \( s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a}\vert s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) (141a-c). If the recipient NP is overt, it follows a second verb \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n}\vert \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n} \), which in this construction occurs only in the perfective \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m} \) (variant \( \eta w\dot{a} \)) regardless of the inflectional category of \( s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a}\vert s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \). This second verb functions like a dative preposition in other languages (141b-c).

\[(141)\]

a. \( s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) [è bìklé] give.Ipfv [Pref money] ‘Give (the) money!’

b. \( \acute{\eta} s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) [è bìklé] \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n} \) làmínì
   1Sg give.Pfv [Pref money] give.Pfv L ‘I gave (the) money to Lamine.’

c. \( \acute{\eta} \ddot{a}\ddot{a} s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) [è bìklé] \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n} \) làmínì =?
   1Sg Pf\( \ddot{a} \)Pfv\( \ddot{a} \) give.Ipfv [Pref money] give.Pfv L = Neg ‘I didn’t give (the) money to Lamine.’

Elsewhere \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n}\vert \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n} \) occurs by itself as a simple transitive verb in the sense ‘help out (sb) with a gift (esp. money)’, cf. English bail out or support (financially). For its part, \( s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a}\vert s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) as a simple transitive verb means ‘send (someone, e.g. on an errand or mission)’.

The verb ‘show’ is \( m\ddot{l}\ddot{a}\dot{a} \sim m\ddot{l}\ddot{a}\dot{a}\dot{m}\ddot{l}\ddot{e}\dot{a} \sim m\ddot{l}\ddot{e}\dot{a} \). It has the same syntax as \( s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a}\vert s\dot{y}\dot{y}\dot{a} \) ‘give’ (142a-c).

\[(142)\]

a. \( m\ddot{l}\ddot{a}\dot{a} \) [è bìklé] give.Ipfv [Pref money] ‘Show (the) money!’

b. \( \acute{\eta} m\ddot{l}\ddot{a}\dot{a} \) [è bìklé] \( \eta\dot{a}\dot{m}\dot{n} \) làmínì
   1Sg show.Pfv [Pref money] give.Pfv L ‘I showed (the) money to Lamine.’
In some other lexicalized two-verb constructions, the two verbs are fused into a compound. The two then cannot be separated by other elements, unlike the case with ‘give’ and ‘show’. Examples are in §13.1.1 below.

10.1.6 Quotative verb ‘say’ (fó\|fwá, jà)

The verb ‘say’ is fó\|fwá before a direct object NP (143a). With a following quotation, if it denotes an actual reported utterance (as it usually does) the invariant form jà is used (143b). We can think of jà as a suppletive perfective positive form. In negative and non-past contexts we are back to fó\|fwá (143c). The most common form of the latter is fó = é, which has a semi-frozen nonhuman 3Sg object enclitic.

(143) a. kà  fó( = é)  cè = ?
  PfvNeg  say.Ipfv(=3SgE)  thing=Neg
  ‘He/She didn’t say anything.’

b. zàkí  jà  bò  bì  sà  ñwiⁿ
  Zaki  say.Pfv  3Sg  Fut  go.Pfv  village
  ‘Zaki said that he (=Zaki) will go on a trip.’

c. zàkí  kà  fó = é( = ?)
  Zaki  PfvNeg  say.Pfv=3SgE(=Neg,)
  dè  bò  bì  sà  ñwiⁿ
  that  3Sg  Fut  go.Pfv  village
  ‘Zaki didn’t say that he (=Zaki) will go on a trip.’

In (143c), the negative glottal stop is present only when there is a pause after ‘say’.

A different jà is a suppletive imperfective for ‘happen’ (§8.7), and can be used in the sense ‘become’ (§10.2.3).
10.2 Existence and possession

10.2.1 Location and existence (gō, past jè)

gō ‘be (somewhere), exist’ and its past-time form jè occur in locational-existential predications and in statives.

In locational function, which can spill over into existence as the location loses specificity, the default locational is mā ‘there (discourse-definite)’. This can be compared with English unstressed *there* in existential (not presentational) *there is/are X*. A more specific locational like fān ‘here’ or a spatial PP is also possible (144c). If the subject is pronominal, gō may be preceded by either a proclitic or an independent pronoun. gō is negated by mān (imperfective negative morpheme).

(144) a. (gō) mā ‘be present, exist (here)’
   1Sg ū gō mā
   2Sg mì gō mā

b. mán gō mā ‘be absent, not exist’

c. nā gō sàmiyāfān
   2Pl be Bobo Dioulasso
   ‘You-Pl are in Bobo Dioulasso.’

For past time, positive or negative, gō is replaced by jè. Its negation is kāa jè ~ kà jè (3Sg) or pronominal variant, with the perfective negative morpheme.

(145) a. ū jè sàmiyāfān
   1Sg be.Past Bobo Dioulasso
   ‘I was in Bobo Dioulasso’

b. ū āā jè sàmiyāfān =ʔ
   1Sg PfvNeg be.Past Bobo Dioulasso=Neg
   ‘I was not in Bobo.’

gō and jè and their negations also occur in a stative construction, typically with a stative form of a stance verb like ‘sit’, ‘stand’, or ‘lie down’. For examples see §10.1.2.2 above.
10.2.2 Nominal copula ('X is [a] Y')

*gō* ‘be’, this time in copular rather than locational-existential function, precedes the predicate noun or NP.

(146) a. ́j gō cèfɔ̀
    1Sg Cop Tiefo
    ‘I am a Tiefo.’ (cf. W98: 206)

b. ́j màɔ gō cèfɔ̀ =ʔ
    1Sg IpfvNeg Cop Tiefo=Neg
    ‘I am not a Tiefo.’

c. ɛ gō cèfɔ̀ →
    1Sg Cop Tiefo.Pl
    ‘We are Tiefo-s.’

d. ɛ màɔ gō cèfɔ̀ =ʔ
    1Sg IpfvNeg Cop Tiefo.Pl=Neg
    ‘We are not Tiefo-s’

e. ́j jè byérá-wi
    1Sg be.Past farmer
    ‘I was a farmer.’

f. ́j àáá jè byérá-wi =ʔ
    1Sg PfvNeg be.Past farmer=Neg
    ‘I was not a farmer.’

Comparison of (146c) and (146d) shows that the noun ‘Tiefo’ has its prolonged plural form in the positive utterance, but the final negative glottal =ʔ blocks the prolongation.

10.2.3 ‘Become (something)’ (jà\dè)

Future-time ‘X will be a Y’ implies a transition, and is expressed by ‘will become’. The ‘become’ verb is jà\dè (§8.7). The complement that follows it is an NP, not an adjective.
10.2.4 Identification

The identificational ‘it is’ enclitic is \( = \dot{y} \) (positive) or invariant particle \( t\ddot{e} = \dot{\theta} \) (negative, including the final glottal negative enclitic). Usually the “subject” is a known entity whose identity is to be clarified, as in ‘it (=the person knocking at the door) is me’ or ‘it was the butler (who did it)’. In the usual case where the identificational morpheme is added to a pronoun, the latter takes independent pronominal form.

(147) a. \( \dot{y} \ b\ddot{i} \ j\ddot{a} \ by\ddot{e}\ddot{r}\ddot{a}\ddot{w} \)
1Sg  Fut  become      farmer
‘I will be/become a farmer.’

b. \( z\ddot{a}\ddot{k}\ddot{i} \ j\ddot{a} \ by\ddot{e}\ddot{r}\ddot{a}\ddot{w} \)
Z    become      farmer
‘Zaki became a farmer.’

c. \( z\ddot{a}\ddot{k}\ddot{i} \ k\ddot{a} \ d\ddot{e} \ by\ddot{e}\ddot{r}\ddot{a}\ddot{w} = \dot{\theta} \)
Z    PfvNeg   become.Ipfv farmer=Neg
‘Zaki did not become a farmer.’

d. \( d\ddot{e} \ c\ddot{e}\ddot{f}\ddot{\ddot{f}} / by\ddot{e}\ddot{r}\ddot{a}\ddot{w} \)
become.Ipfv Tiefo / farmer
‘Become-2Sg a Tiefo/a farmer!’

(148) a. \( j\ddot{o}\ddot{r}\ddot{\ddot{a}} \ b\ddot{o} = \dot{y} \)
who?  3Sg=it.is
‘Who is it?’ (e.g. said to someone calling or knocking on the door)

b. \( p\ddot{i} = \dot{y} \)
1Sg=it.is
‘It’s me.’ (reply to [a])

c. \( \ddot{\ddot{e}}-y\ddot{o} \ t\ddot{e} = \dot{\theta} \)
1Pl    it.is.not=Neg
‘It isn’t us.’
10.2.5 Possessive predicates

10.2.5.1 ‘Y has X’ (gō … bā́ā)

In this construction, the possessum X is the subject. The predicate consists of gō ‘be (somewhere), exist’ plus the M-toned morpheme bā́ā (149a-c). This morpheme can be interpreted as a specialized postposition. The sense is ‘Y has (an) X’ rather than ‘(The) X belongs to Y’. The possessum X is often indefinite, being thereby introduced into the discourse, as in Y has (an)’ in English and similar ‘have’ constructions in other languages. It follows that gō ‘be’ should be taken in locational-existential rather than copular sense: ‘X exists/is present [belonging to Y]’ rather than ‘X is [Y’s possession], X belongs to Y’. As elsewhere, gō is replaced by jè in past-time contexts (149d-e).

(149)  

a.  

bá’a  gō  [ʧ́  bā́ā]  
sheep  be  [1Sg  Poss]  
‘I have a sheep.’

b.  

bá’a  gō  [zākí  bā́ā]  
sheep  be  [Z  Poss]  
‘Zaki has a sheep.’

c.  

bá’a  má’a  gō  [ʧ́  bā́ā] = ?  
sheep  IpfvNeg  be  [1Sg  Poss]=Neg  
‘I don’t have a sheep.’

d.  

bá’a  jè  [ʧ́ / zākí  bā́ā]  
sheep  be.Past  [1Sg/Z  Poss]  
‘I had/Zaki had a sheep.’

e.  

bá’a  kà  jè  [ʧ́  bā́ā] = ?  
sheep  PfvNeg  be.Past  [1Sg  Poss]=Neg  
‘I didn’t have a sheep.’

10.2.5.2 ‘X belongs to Y’ (dé = ŷ, dó)

When the possessum is known and the possessor is to be specified, a construction of the type “it’s Y’s possession” or (with overt X) “X is Y’s possession” is used. The noun that we here gloss as ‘possession’ is dódó ~ dósó. The +ATR variant dódó shifts to e-vowels in these predicative constructions.
In the first version, the ‘it is’ enclitic =ỳ is added to Y dé. This is pronounced [Y dé] =ỳ with M-toned enclitic, perhaps suggesting underlying /dē/ with HM tones. We tentatively take dé here to be a mutation from dóó (variant déé), rather than as perfective dē ‘happened, took place’ (§8.7) or imperfective dē ‘does’, but both déé and dē occur (together) in a similar construction (see just below). There need be no overt mention of X, though it may occur as a preposed topic. The 2Sg form has a suffixal possessor.

(150)  \( (X,) \, [Y \text{ dé}] =ỳ \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(X,)</th>
<th>(Y dé)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ṭ dé =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s mine.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>è dé =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s ours.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>dé-yè =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s yours-Sg.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>nā dé =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s yours-Pl.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>ṭ dé =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s his/hers.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>ď dé =ỳ</td>
<td>‘It’s theirs.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is negated as ṭ dé tē =ʔ ‘it’s not mine’ and so forth.

Another version, exemplified in (151), adds a final morpheme dē instead of the ‘it is’ clitic. The other dē morphemes in our data are the perfective of suppletive já\dē ‘happen, take place’ (§8.7), and the imperfective of transitive dē\diyà ‘do’. When the possessor Y is pronominal, it may be in proclitic possessor form, as in (150) above, or in independent pronoun form. The ‘possession’ noun can take the form of either dýɔ́ or dēé. X may be omitted or it may occur as a preclausal topic.

(151)  \( (X,) \, [Y \text{ dýɔ́} \text{ dē}] \, (X,) \, [Y \text{ déé} \text{ dē}] \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(X,)</th>
<th>(Y dýɔ́)</th>
<th>(X,)</th>
<th>(Y déé)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1Sg</td>
<td>ṭ dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>ṭ déé dē</td>
<td>‘It’s mine.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Pl</td>
<td>è dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>è déé dē</td>
<td>‘It’s ours.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Sg</td>
<td>mi dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>dé-yè dē</td>
<td>‘It’s yours-Sg.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2Pl</td>
<td>nā dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>nā déé dē</td>
<td>‘It’s yours-Pl.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Sg</td>
<td>ṭ dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>ṭ déé dē</td>
<td>‘It’s his/hers.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3Pl</td>
<td>ď dýɔ́ dē</td>
<td>ď déé dē</td>
<td>‘It’s theirs.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

107
The fuller construction in (152) below has \( X \) (NP or pronominal clitic), \( gō \) ‘be’ in copular or locational function, and a possessed form of \( dóó. \) \( gō \) requires a subject, minimally a pronominal. Since there is no overt predicative element such as \( =ỳ \) or \( dē, \) and since \( gō \) often precedes a locational expression, one could argue that \( dóó \) functions in this construction somewhat like a postposition ‘in the possession of’.

(152) \( X \ gō \ [Y \ dóó] \)

1Sg \( X \ gō \ [ỳ \ dóó] \) ‘X is mine/belongs to me.’
1Pl \( X \ gō \ [è \ dóó] \) ‘X is ours/belongs to us.’
2Sg \( X \ gō \ [dó-ỳàà] \sim \ [dē-ỳàà] \) ‘X is yours/belongs to you-Sg.’
\sim \( X \ gō \ [dó-ë] \)
2Pl \( X \ gō \ [nà \ dóó] \) ‘X is yours/belongs to you-Pl.’
3Sg \( X \ gō \ [ỳ \ dóó] \) ‘X is his-or-hers/belongs to him-or-her.’
3Pl \( X \ gō \ [ò \ dóó] \) ‘X is theirs/belongs to them.’

This is negated regularly, with \( máⁿ \ gō \ ‘not be’. \) Clause-final negative \( =? \) shortens \( dóó \) to produce \( dō=?. \) For past time ‘X was mine’, etc. \( gō \) is replaced by its regular past counterpart \( jè. \)

A few examples of \( dé=ỳ \) and \( dóó \) are in (153).

(153) a. \( [è \ lë] \ [zàkì \ dé=ỳ] \)
\([Pref \ housing.compound] \ [Z \ Poss=it.is]\)
‘The house (and courtyard) belongs to Zaki.’

b. \( [ò \ sòóñ] \ gō \ [ò \ dòó] \)
\([Pref \ horse] \ be \ [3Pl \ Poss]\)
‘The horse is theirs.’

c. \( [ò \ sòóñ] \ máⁿ \ gō \ [ỳ \ dò]=? \)
\([Pref \ horse] \ IpfvNeg \ be \ [1Sg \ Poss]=Neg\)
‘The horse isn’t mine.’

10.3 Stative predicates

Statives derived from dynamic (active) verbs of stance like ‘sit’ and ‘stand’ were discussed in §10.1.2.2. In this section we present defective, stative-only (quasi-)verbs, and adjectival predicates.
Statives, whether derived or underived (defective), do not have different forms for aspect categories (perfective, imperfective). Whether they pattern as perfective or imperfective is brought out by their negations ($māⁿ$ imperfective, $kā$ and variants perfective).

### 10.3.1 fyê ‘be gone’

The active verb $sē|sā$ ‘go’ has an apparently noncognate (i.e. suppletive) stative counterpart $fyê$ ‘be (already) gone, be out (=not at home)’. It is common in contexts where the motion event has been completed, so its frequency is greater than that of its English translation equivalent, which has no such requirement. One advantage of using $fyê$ is that it avoids any possibility of confusing imperfective $sē$ ‘go’ with interrogative $sē$ ‘(to) where?’.

(154)  

| Zaki | fyê | $ŋwǐⁿ|kǐⁿ  
| go.stat | village | already  

‘Zaki has already gone to the village.’

$fyê$ is incompatible with negation. ‘(He/She) has not gone’ is always $kā sē = ?$ with the normal ‘go’ verb.

### 10.3.2 ‘Want’ ($gō$ … $bāɣ$)

‘X want Y’ with an NP complement $Y$ is expressed by subject ($X$), then $gō$ ‘be’, then what looks vaguely like a PP of the form $[Y bāɣ]$. The L-tones and the fricative $ɣ$ of $bāɣ$ distinguish the ‘X want Y’ construction from the ‘Y have X’ construction ($§10.2.5.1$), which has the form $X gō [Y bāɣ]$ with M-toned postposition and pharyngeal $ɣ$ (155a-b). If the complement is a verb phrase (‘X want [to VP]’), $bāɣ$ directly follows $gō$, and precedes an infinitival complement (155c). As usual with $gō$, negation is with stative negative $māⁿ$ (155b).

(155) a.  

| Ńgō | $[nū, bāɣ]$  
| 3Sg | be | water wanting  

‘He/She wants some water.’ ($< mū$)

b.  

| $māⁿ$ | gō | $[zākī, bāɣ] = ?$  
| 1Sg.lpfvNeg | be | Z wanting=Neg  

‘I don’t want Zaki.’
10.3.3 ‘Know’ verbs

There are two ‘know’ verbs (as in French and German). Both are invariant in form (no overt perfective/imperfective stem split) and both are semantically stative. However, they differ in morphosyntactic aspect (brought out by negation).

10.3.3.1 kɔ̀ⁿ ‘know’

kɔ̀ⁿ ‘know’ is used like French savoir (with a clausal complement denoting a proposition, or a pronominal or demonstrative referring to a fact). ‘Know it’ referring to a previously introduced fact has an E-class 3Sg object, the combination heard as kɔ̀=yⁿ or kɔ̀=ɛⁿ (156c). kɔ̀ⁿ behaves like a perfective verb and is negated by kǎ (3Sg) and related forms (156a,c).

(156) a. ụ gáá kɔ̀ⁿ
1Sg PfvNeg know
‘I don’t know (the answer).’

b. ụ kɔ̀ⁿ [tá zàkí fyê]
1Sg know [that Z go.Stat]
‘I know that Zaki has gone.’

c. zàkí kǎ kɔ̀=yⁿ=ʔ
Z PfvNeg know=3SgE=Neg
‘Zaki doesn’t know it.’

For factive clausal complements (‘know that …’), see §13.7 below.

10.3.3.2 jì ‘know, be aware of, be acquainted with’

jì means ‘know’ especially in the senses ‘be aware of (sth, sb)’ and ‘be acquainted/familiar with (sb)’. This includes the semantic range of French connaître. jì is cognate to the only Tiefo-D ‘know’ verb recorded by Winkelmann (jì ‘wissen, kennen’, W98: 229). It is negated by mâⁿ.
(157)  a.  nj̬ jī zàkí
        1Sg  know Z
    ‘I know Zaki.’

b.  nj̬ jù = ǜ
        1Sg  know=3SgObj
    ‘I know him.’

c.  zàkí màⁿ jī = yⁿ = ?
        Z  IpfvNeg  know=1SgObj=Neg
    ‘Zaki doesn’t know me.’
11 Focalization

11.1 Focalization of a constituent in an indicative clause (lè ~ në)

The focus particle is lè, optionally nasalizing to në in a nasal environment. It follows the focalized constituent, which remains in its normal linear position. The focalized constituent may be an NP. If it is a pronoun, it takes independent (not proclitic) form. The pronominal paradigm is therefore (158).

(158) 1Sg njí në ~ njí lè
1Pl é-yò lè
2Sg mì në ~ mì lè
2Pl nā-yò lè
3Sg bó lè
3Pl bòó lè

11.1.1 Subject focalization

An addressee who is asked question (159a) may reply with (159b) or (159c).

(159) a. jàr³ⁿ bì sà
    who? Fut go.Pfv
    ‘Who will go?’

b. [njí nè] bì sà
    [1Sg Foc] Fut go.Pfv
    ‘It’s I [focus] who will go.’

c. [zàkí lè] bì sà
    [Zaki Foc] Fut go.Pfv
    ‘It’s Zaki [focus] who will go.’

11.1.2 Focalized object

The focalized object remains in its normal postverbal position. The focus particle optionally follows it. If the object is a pronoun, it takes independent (not enclitic) pronominal form,
whether or not the focus particle is overt (160b). This distinguishes object focus from a simple transitive with no focalized constituent, which does have enclitic object pronouns (160c).

(160)  
   a.  zàkí   kpà   jòrò
       Zaki   hit.Pfv   who?
       ‘Who did Zaki hit?’

   b.  zàkí   kpà   [nì  (nè)]
       Zaki   hit.Pfv   [1Sg  (Foc)]
       ‘It was me [focus] who Zaki hit.’

   c.  zàkí   kpà = yò
       Zaki   hit.Pfv=1Sg
       ‘Zaki hit me.’

11.1.3 Focalized adverb

In (161a), ‘here’ is focalized by repetition on both left and right edges of the clause. However, the more usual and more productive construction has Focus particle lè with the adverb clause-finally (161b). Negation is with lè tɛʔ (161c).

(161)  
   a.  fàò  yálvá  bì  sùndè  [è  sàłèò]
       here  1PlIncl  Fut  work.Pfv  [Pref  work(n)]  here
       ‘It is here [focus] that we-Incl will work.’

   b.  yálvá  bì  sùndè  [è  sàłèò]  [è  lè  lè]
       1PlIncl  Fut  work.Pfv  [Pref  work(n)]  [Pref  compound  Foc]
       ‘It’s in the village [focus] that we-Incl will work.’

   c.  yálvá  bì  sùndè  [è  sàłèò]
       1PlIncl  Fut  work.Pfv  [Pref  work(n)]
       [fàò  lè  tɛʔ = ?]
       [here  Foc  it.is.not=Neg]
       ‘It is not here [focus] that we-Incl will work.’
11.2 Interrogatives

11.2.1 Polar (yes/no) interrogative (wà)

The clause-final interrogative particle wà, also present in Jula, is exemplified in (162a-b) and glossed as “Q” in interliners.

(162) a. m̀ bí sà ŋwl’ wà
   2Sg Fut go.Pfv village Q
   ‘Will you travel (=go on a trip)?’

   b. zàkì bì bà fànè wà
   Zaki Fut come.Pfv around.here Q
   ‘Will Zaki come here?’

For wà in parallel disjunctive questions, see §6.2.

11.2.2 Content interrogatives

The WH-interrogative remains in its normal syntactic position (in situ) rather than being fronted.

11.2.2.1 ‘Who?’ (jàr3’)

jàr3’ ‘who?’ is illustrated in §11.1.1 (subject) and §11.1.2 (object). It has a contracted variant jàr3. The plural can be expressed as jèr3→ (denasalized and optionally prolonged), or by adding a 3Pl pronoun as jèr3 boó.

(163) a. [à wùù ŋj3’] [jàr3’ d353]=être
   [Pref house Dem] [who? Poss]=it.is
   ‘Whose house is this?’

   b. à ñ bì bà [nà jàr3’]
   Fut 2Sg Fut come.Pfv [with who?]
   ‘Who will you come with?’
11.2.2.2 ‘What?’ (bìè)

bìè (variant byè) ‘what?’ is exemplified in (164a). It is also part of ‘with what?’ (164b) and ‘why?’ (164c).

(164) a. m̀ gô [bìè (lè)] bàyà
   2Sg be [[what? (Foc) wanting]
   ‘What do you-Sg want?’ (see §10.3.2)

   b. ñ wàyà byê [à fîyáìá] [nà bìè]
   2Sg Prog cultivate.Ipfv [Pref field] [with what?]
   ‘What do you cultivate/are you cultivating with?’

   c. bìè-já m̀ bà sàmiyáìì
   why? 2Sg come.Pfv Bobo
   ‘Why did you come to Bobo?’

11.2.2.3 ‘Where?’ (sè, jà-tàíìyì)

Tiefo-N distinguishes between allative ‘whither?’ (or ablative ‘whence?’) and static locative ‘where?’.

‘Whither?/whence?’ is sè, and is used with a motion verb (usually ‘go’ in allative sense, ‘exit, go out’ in ablative sense) to specify either the starting or ending point of a trajectory. (165a) is an ablative context, (165b-c) are allative. (165d) shows that sè is optionally extended to static position (‘be’) in contexts where immediately preceding motion is presupposed.

(165) a. ñ glà sè
   3Sg exit.Pfv whither?
   ‘Where did/does he/she come from?’
b. ö sigiⁿ-mà sê
3Pl run.Pfv whither?
‘(To) where did they run?’

c. nā wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ sê sê
2Pl Prog go.Ipfv whither?
‘Where are you-Pl going?’

d. [[ná-mí jùr³] súgà] ŋ̄ gō sê
[child Rel] fall.Pfv 3Sg be where?
‘The child who fell, where is he/she?’ (implying motion)

sê is nearly homophonous to the imperfective form of ‘go’.

In static (non-motion) locative contexts, ‘where?’ is most often já-tàływ ‘where?’ It is somewhat obscurely segmentable into interrogative já- (cf. já-sí-ŋà ‘when?’) and compound final -tàływ ‘place’ loosely related to the noun tiyǎ́á ‘place’.

(166) a. ŋ̀ gō já-tàływ
2Sg be where?
‘Where are you-Sg?’

b. à gō já-tàływ
3SgA be where?
‘Where is it (e.g. house)?’

c. yá́á bì jólè já-tàływ
1Pl.Incl Fut sleep.Pfv where?
‘Where will we-Incl sleep?’

11.2.2.4 ‘When?’ (já-sí-ŋà, já-sí)

‘When?’ is já-sí-ŋà, or slightly reduced já-sí. The já- element also occurs in one of the ‘where?’ interrogatives (preceding section).

(167) ŋ̀ bà já-sí
2Sg come.Ipfv when?
‘When are you-Sg coming?’
11.2.2.5 ‘How?’ (*mànká*)

The manner-adverbial interrogative is *mànká* ‘how?’

(168) *yāšá bì kéré-mà [à dàgùù] mànká*

1PlIncl Fut go.up.Pfv [Pref hill] how?

‘How will we-Incl climb the hill?’

11.2.2.6 ‘How much/many?’ (*jè*)

The quantificational interrogative is *jè* ‘how much/many?’

(169) 1. *ŋ̄də̀rá [bà'na dígīnà] jè*

3Sg buy.Pfv [sheep one] how.much?

‘How much did he/she buy one sheep for?’

2. *[bló jè lè] bà [[à fīyāsī] wúrí]*

[rain(n) how.much? Foc come.Pfv [[Pref field] inside]

‘How much rain fell in the fields?’

The frequent combination of *jè* with *bíklé* ‘money’ is abbreviated *bí jè*.

11.2.2.7 ‘Which?’ (*jinàţi*)

The interrogative adjective, identifying a nonhuman individual from a set, is *jinàţi* ‘which?’ (170a). *jinàţi* is also an A-class relative pronoun (§12.1 below). With human referents, however, ‘who?’ is juxtaposed to a singular human noun (170b).

(170) a. *ŋ̄gō [dšrā́já jinàţi]*

3Sg be [courtyard which?]

‘He/She is (=dwell) in which courtyard (=housing complex)?’

b. *ná-mí / džèj jə̀rə̀ bì sà*

child / man who? Fut go.Pfv

‘Which child/man will go?’
12 Relativization

12.1 Relativization of a constituent in a clause

The relative pronouns are in (171). The final rising tones are leveled to L-tones before an H-tone (§2.7.3.1).

(171)  

a. \( jôr\breve{a}\sim jür\breve{a} \)
   human, nonhuman O-class

b. \( jôr\acute{e}\breve{a} \)
   nonhuman E-class

c. \( jînâ\breve{î}a \)
   nonhuman A-class

d. \( jôrî\breve{a}\sim jûrî\breve{a} \)
   plural

Compare interrogatives \( jôr\breve{a}\) ‘who?’ (§11.2.2.1) and nonhuman \( jînâ\breve{î}a \) ‘which?’ (§11.2.2.7).

The relative pronoun is positioned at the end of the relativized-on NP, which remains \textit{in situ} (i.e. in its normal position within main clauses).

12.1.1 Subject relatives

The main clause (172a) is converted into a relative clause in (172b). The plural equivalent of (172b) is (172c).

(172)  

a. \[ ná-mí dëj \súgà füa \]
   [child a.certain] fall.Pfv here
   ‘A (certain) child fell here.’ (\( dëj \) for \( dî \), §5.7)

b. \[ [ná-mî jürî\breve{a}] súgà \] ū gō sê
   [[child Rel] fall.Pfv] 3Sg be where?
   ‘The child who fell, where is he/she?’

c. \[ [ná-mî yô jürî\breve{a}] súgà \] ō gō sê
   [child-Pl Rel.Pl] fall.Pfv] 3Pl be where?
   ‘The children who fell, where are they?’
12.1.2 Object relatives

There are two types of object relative, the semantically usual one (§12.1.2.1) and another one that specifies functions (§12.1.2.2).

12.1.2.1 Ordinary object relatives

The simple main clause (173a) is converted into an object relative (173b). The parallel example (173c) shows that the relativizer *jär3* is compatible with nonhuman as well as human heads.

173  a.  zàkí  kpà  [nā-mī  dī]
   Z  hit.Pfv  [child  a.certain]
   ‘Zaki hit a (certain) child.’

   b.  zàkí  kpà  [nā-mī  jär3]
   Z  hit.Pfv  [child  Rel]  3Sg  be  where?
   ‘Where is the child that Zaki hit?’

   c.  zàkí  kpà  [sèrè-bì  jär3]  ŋ̄  gō  sè
   Z  hit.Pfv  [stone-child  Rel]  3Sg  be  where?
   ‘Where is the stone that Zaki hit?’

12.1.2.2 Instrumental (function-specifying) relatives (dò)

In this construction, an entity (here, ‘water’) is specified for function by a verb (here, ‘drink’). The noun occurs in its usual form. The verb is followed by dòò or dỳǝ. These are L-toned variants of dōó ~ dỳǝ ‘possession’.

174  a.  ŋ̄  bà  nà  [[ò  nù]  pā  dòò]
   1Sg  come.Pfv  with  [[Pref  water]  drink.Pfv  Poss]
   ‘I have brought water to drink (=drinking water).’

   b.  [à  fèrèy]  nèrèn  dỳǝ
   [Pref  clothing]  wash.Pfv  Poss
   ‘clothes for washing (=to be washed)’
12.1.3 Possessor relative

The relative marker *jɔrɔⁿ* directly follows the possessor, separating it from the possessum. Main clause (175a) is converted into possessor relative (175b).

(a) 
[[ŋ̀ ɗɔ́y] wùù] sùgà
[[Poss man] house] fall.Pfv
‘The man’s house fell.’

(b) 
[[ŋ̀ ɗɔ́y jɔrɔⁿ] wùù] sùgà, ū gō sê
[[Poss man Rel] house] fall.Pfv, 3Sg be where?
‘Where is the man whose house fell?’

12.1.4 Adpositional complement relative

Instrumental prepositional relatives are (176b,d,f). Each of them follows a corresponding main clause (176a,c,e).

(a) 
zung jɔ̀ɣɔ̀ byé [nè = [è bårɔⁿ]]
z Prog cultivate.Ipfv [with [Pref daba]]
‘Zaki cultivates (does farm work) with a daba (hoe).’

(b) 
zung jɔ̀ɣɔ̀ byé nè = [è bårɔⁿ jɔrɔⁿ]
z Prog cultivate.Ipfv with [Pref daba Rel]
è gō sê
3SgE be where?
‘Where is the hoe that Zaki cultivates with?’

(c) 
zung wɔ́ɣɔ̀ kú [à d̀yànì] [nà = [à yèyàʕá]]
z Prog cut.Ipfv [Pref wood] [with [Pref ax]]
‘Zaki cuts wood with an ax.’

(d) 
zung wɔ́ɣɔ̀ kú [à d̀yànì] [nà = [à yèyàʕá jìnàʕá]]
z Prog cut.Ipfv [Pref wood] [with [Pref ax Rel]]
ā gō sê
3SgA be where?
‘Where is the ax that Zaki cuts the wood with?’
e. [ò yàá] wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ cónā [nɔ = [ɔ fəⁿ]]
   [Pref woman.Pl] Prog cook.lpfv [with [Pref fonio]]
   ‘The women cook with fonio (grain).’

f. [ò yàá] wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ cónā [nɔ = [ɔ fəⁿ jərɔⁿ]]
   [Pref woman.Pl] Prog cook.lpfv [with [Pref fonio Rel]]
   ý gō sê
   3SgO be where?
   ‘Where is the fonio (grain) that they women cook with?’

Locative postpositional relative (177b) is based on main clause (177a).

(177)  a. ū wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ cónā sùsú [[à ʃìtɔ̀ʕɔ̀ w] wúři]
   3Sg Prog cook.lpfv millet.cake [[Pref pot] inside]
   ‘He/She cooks millet cakes in a pot.’

b. ū wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ cónā sùsú [[à ʃìtɔ̀ʕɔ̀ jìnàʔá] wúři]
   3Sg Prog cook.lpfv millet.cake [[Pref pot Rel] inside]
   ā gō sê
   3SgA be where?
   ‘Where is the pot that he/she cooks millet cakes in?’
13 Multi-verb constructions

This chapter begins with fused verb-verb compounds, then moves on to more complex constructions.

13.1 Tight and loose verb-verb combinations

In the following subsections of §13.1, combinations of two stems that cannot be separated are discussed. In other chapters: ‘bring’ and ‘take/deliver (there)’ are expressed as ‘come with’ and ‘go with’ (§7.2.2); and ‘give’ and ‘show’ are constructions consisting of a main verb ‘give’ or ‘show’ and a second verb, separated from the main one, that functions somewhat like a dative marker (§10.1.5).

13.1.1 Tight (inseparable) verb-verb compounds

A few lexical items functioning as verbs can be segmented into two stems, fused together, allowing no intervening element. We detect the composite structure by observing that each part has a perfective-imperfective alternation of the sort elsewhere fond in simple verb stems.

In a few such compounds, one or both components also occur independently as simple verbs (178a-e). The component(s) is/are shown under the compound. A special subtype is durative iterations of a single stem like *kórí-kórí* (178e), a construction that appears to be limited to imperfective positive clauses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>imperfective</th>
<th>perfective</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>jāyā-bórū</td>
<td>jāyā-bórū-là</td>
<td>‘become lost, lose one’s way’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jāyā</td>
<td>jāyā</td>
<td>‘put down; leave/abandon’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bórū</td>
<td>blā</td>
<td>‘be wrong’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>gbā-dó</td>
<td>gbā-dó-rà</td>
<td>‘divide (into parts)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>gbā</td>
<td>gbā</td>
<td>‘split; shatter’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c.  yɔ̄-dünū  yɔ̄-bâ-dünū   ‘knock (sb) down’; see (193) below
    ~ yɔ̄-dûrû  ~  yɔ̄-bâ-dûrû  ‘(blacksmith) forge (blade, by striking
    with hammer)’

    yɔ̄  yɔ̄-bâ  ‘(blacksmith) forge (blade, by striking
    with hammer)’

d.  sûgú-dɔ̄ɣɔ̄  sûgú-dɔ̄ɣɔ̄  ‘help (sb)’
    sûgú  sûgú  ‘catch’

e.  kɔ́rũ-kɔ́rũ  —  ‘groppe, feel one’s way’
    kɔ́rũ  klâ  ‘touch’

In other compound-like sequences the components do not occur separately. Therefore the
only evidence for segmentation is their unusually heavy form (three or four syllables, not
including trisyllabics ending in a sonorant-vowel syllable) and/or what appears to be separate
morphophonological marking of aspect in the two parts (vocalic mutations, tone changes,
perfective suffixation).

The strongest candidates are the four in (179a-c). In (179c) it is possible that the final
element is the same (at least etymologically) in both examples.

(179)  imperfective  perfective  gloss

a.  gbâ-y-dûrû  gbâ-râ-dûrû  ‘knock down, cause to fall’; see (193) below

b.  lâ-bâ-yâ  lê-bâ-yâ  ‘keep spinning around’

c.  kâ-yâⁿ-sâ  kâ-yâⁿ-sâ(-lâ)  ‘reply’
    nârâⁿ-sâ  nârâⁿ-sâ(-lâ)  ‘escape’

Some other possible, but unclear, cases are in (180a-b) below. In (180a), the issue is whether
the mutation to e in both syllables reflects separate mutations in two parts of a verb-verb
compound, or is a single stem-wide mutation. In (91b) above, the latter analysis was
suggested, but a composite origin cannot be excluded. For ‘be cured’, see also the adjectives
(‘clean’) in (50g) above. In (180b), suspicion of bipartite morphology is raised by the LH or
MH tone contour, which occur with no other verbs, and by the fact that the possible second
element (jâⁿ-fâ, mâ-kîrî, yâ-tôy, yê-flâ) begins with an obstruent. In other words, they sound
like compounds. Etymologically, some may be Jula borrowings (clearly so in the case of
‘betray’), but they could still be treated in Tiefo-N as bipartite.
The morphosyntax of one of the clearly compound sequences, ‘help’ from (178d) above, is illustrated in (181a-b). The first element means ‘catch’, the second (invariant in form) is obscure.

(181) a. ŋ́ sòyঃ-dɔyঃ zàkí
1Sg catch.Pfv-?? Pfv  Z
‘I helped Zaki.’

b. ŋ́ gà sùgú-dɔyঃ zàkí =ʔ
t1Sg PfvNeg  catch.Ipfv-??  Ipfv  Z=Neg
‘I didn’t help Zaki.’

The compound ‘become lost’ from (178a) above consists of ‘put’ and ‘be wrong’.

(182) a. zàkí jàyঃ-bɔrù-là  [[à bɛ̀y”] wúrì]
Z  put.Pfv-be.wrong.Pfv  [[Pref the.bush]  in]
‘Zaki got lost in the bush.’ (< bɛ̀y”)

b. zàkí kà jàyঃ-bɔrù  [[à bɛ̀y”] wúrì]=ʔ
tZaki  PfvNeg  put.Ipfv-be.wrong.Ipfv  [[Pref the.bush]  in]=Neg
‘Zaki didn’t get lost in the bush.’

13.2 Same-subject constructions

13.2.1 ‘Be able to’ (pɔ̀rɔⁿ ~ pɔ̀yⁿ)

In the absence of a verbal complement, ‘be able’ is expressed by the stative verb pùrùⁿ, as in ŋ́ pùrùⁿ ‘I can’. When there is a preceding verbal complement (in imperfective form), pùrùⁿ is replaced by the equally stative pɔ̀rɔⁿ ~ pɔ̀yⁿ, which is directly attached to the verb (preceding
any postverbal constituents). More or less free alternations between the shapes Cvr and Cvy are common in Tiefo-N verbal morphology; see (95b) and (96a) in §8.5.2.

Examples of \( p\text{ôr} \sim p\text{ôy} \) following imperfective verbs are (183a-b). (183b) confirms that \( p\text{ôr} \sim p\text{ôy} \) remains adjacent to the subordinated verb even when the latter has a postverbal complement. See also (211) below.

\[
\begin{align*}
(183) & \quad \text{a. } z\text{àkí } s\text{è } p\text{ôy}^n \quad \text{Z go.Ipfv be.able} \\
& \quad \text{‘Zaki can go.’} \\
& \quad \text{b. } z\text{àkí } k\text{ú } p\text{ôr}^n [à k\text{èyấvá}] \quad \text{Z cut.Ipfv be.able [Pref meat]} \\
& \quad \text{‘Zaki can cut the meat.’}
\end{align*}
\]

13.2.2 Infinitival constructions

If two events have the same agent (subject), the first event is expressed as an ordinary indicative clause in whatever inflectional category is relevant (e.g. perfective positive, imperative). The second event is expressed as an invariant infinitival verb-phrase, i.e. with infinitival \( ná \) followed by the imperfective stem of the verb and any clausemate constituents (§3.1.4). We distinguish sequenced events from simultaneously overlapping events.

13.2.2.1 Event sequences

In (184), the two same-agent actions are sequenced in time, though the sequence is sufficiently routinized (‘go and come back’, ‘fall down and get back up’, ‘get up and sit down’ = move over) to have some overall coherence.

\[
\begin{align*}
(184) & \quad \text{a. } z\text{àkí } s\text{à } [ná bá] \\
& \quad \text{Z go.Pfv [Infin come.Ipfv]} \\
& \quad \text{‘Zaki went and came back.’} \\
& \quad \text{b. } k\text{à } b\text{í } s\text{à } [ná bá] \\
& \quad \text{3Sg Fut go.Pfv [Infin come.Ipfv]} \\
& \quad \text{‘He/She will go and come back.’}
\end{align*}
\]
c. ū sē [ná bà]  
1Sg go.Ipfv [Infin come.Ipfv]  
‘I am going and coming back.’

d. zàkí sùgà [ná yígí]  
Z fall.Pfv [Infin get.up.Ipfv]  
‘Zaki fell and got back up.’

e. ū yígà [ná tārān fándè]  
3Sg get.up.Pfv [Infin sit.Ipfv over.there]  
‘He/She got up and sat (=moved to another seat) over there.’

This construction also occurs in imperatives. The first verb is in the imperfective stem with no preceding elements. In this imperative version, the infinitival morpheme ná is optional.

(185) a. sē [(ná) bà]  
go.Ipfv [(Infin) come.Ipfv]  
‘Go and come back!’

b. só [(ná) yígí]  
fall.Ipfv [(Infin) get.up.Ipfv]  
‘Fall and get back up!’

c. yígí [(ná) tārān fándè]  
get.up.Ipfv [(Infin) sit.Ipfv over.there]  
‘Get up and sit (=move to another seat) over there!’

13.2.2.2 Simultaneous co-events

The same construction with the second verb in infinitival form is used when the two actions by the same agent are simultaneous or overlap, i.e. constitute co-events abstracted from a single event. In (186), ‘jump’ and ‘fall’ combine to mean ‘jump (all the way) down’.

(186) a. ū yi-là [ná só]  
3Sg jump.Pfv [Infin fall.Ipfv]  
‘He/She jumped down.’
b. ụnụ [ná sọ]
    jump.lpfv [Infin fall.lpfv]
    ‘Jump down!’

In (187), the two actions (motion and singing) are independent but overlap in time.

(187) [ụ ná wọ́yọ́ bẹ́] [ná wọ́ à yɪrìí]
    [3SG Prog come.lpfv] [Infin sing [Pref song]]
    ‘He/She came while singing (a song).’

13.2.2.3 ‘Prevent’ (yáyá) plus infinitive

yáyá/yáyá, also a simple transitive ‘squeeze, press’, can take an object plus an infinitival complement in the sense ‘prevent’. There is no negative marker.

(188) ụ yáyá zákú [ná sē]
    1SG press Z [Infin go.lpfv]
    ‘I prevented Zaki from going.’

13.2.3 ‘Begin’ plus complement

‘Begin X’ is expressed in Tiefo-N as ‘take (receive) the mouth of X’, with nìyɔ̀ʕɔ̀ⁿ ‘mouth’ as a compound final (heard here as L-toned). The initial (X) is either a noun that can denote an activity, or the imperfective stem of a verb (which is arguably a reduced infinitive with the usual infinitival morpheme ná omitted).

(189) a. ụ fíyà [è sɡè̀-nìyɔ̀ʕɔ̀ⁿ]
    3sg take.Pfv [Pref work(n)-mouth]
    ‘He/She began (to) work.’

b. ụ fíyà [à byé-nìyɔ̀ʕɔ̀ⁿ]
    3sg take.Pfv [Pref cultivate.lpfv-mouth]
    ‘He/She began (to) cultivate (=do farm work).’

a. ụ fíyà [à yì-nìyɔ̀ʕɔ̀ⁿ]
    3sg take.Pfv [Pref jump.lpfv-mouth]
    ‘He/She began (to) jump.’
13.3 Different-subject constructions

13.3.1 Different-subject event sequences

When two events, with different agents/subjects, are combined, each has the form of an independent clause. There is no subordinating or linking element, though the combination may be prosodically seamless.

(190) \[ŋ̄ kpà zákí ŋ̄ fyê\]
\[[1Sg hit.Pfv Z] [3Sg go.Stat]\]
‘I hit Zaki and (then) he went away.’

13.3.2 Periphrastic causatives with \(jåyå\|jåyà\ ‘put’\)

As indicated in §10.1.4, there are many ambi-valent (labile) verbs with alternative intransitive and (more or less causative) transitive senses, like ‘enter’ and ‘put in’. Alternatively, there is also an explicitly causative biclausal construction. The higher clause has an inflected form of \(jåyå\|jåyà\ ‘put (down); leave (sth)’.

In what is probably the most common version, the notional lower-clause agent is expressed as an upstairs direct object of ‘put down; leave’. The lower clause is then expressed either as a nominalized verb, such as a compound with incorporated object (191a), or as an inflected clause with a subject pronominal coindexed to the raised main-clause object (191b).

(191) a. \[zákí jåyà = yⁿ sògɔlɔ̀-dù\]
\[Z put.Pfv=1Sg caterpillar-eat.Nom\]
‘Zaki made me eat the shea-tree caterpillars.’ (< sògɔlɔ̀

b. \[zákí jåyà = yⁿ\]
\[Z put.Pfv=1Sg\]
[ŋ̄ diyà sògɔlɔ̀\[a\]]
[1Sg eat.Pfv caterpillar]
[=(a)]

By the way, these caterpillars (\textit{Cirina butyrospermi}) are commercialized, roasted or boiled, and heavily consumed around Bobo Dioulasso in July-August. When cooked, they are crunchy and very tasty with a little salt or a dipping sauce! They have their own annual festival in Bobo.
In a second version of this construction, if the lower clause denotes motion, the lower subject is expressed as a comitative phrase (‘with X’) (192a-b). In a third, the lower subject appears as object of ‘put’ and is followed by an infinitival complement (192c).

(192) a.  zàkí  jàɣà  bà  [nà  ý’]
Z  put.Pfv  come.Pfv  [with  lSg]

‘Zaki made me come.’

b.  ý  jàɣà  bà / sê  [nà  zàkí]
1Sg  put.Pfv  come/go.Ipfv  [with  Z]

‘I made Zaki come/go.’

c.  ý  jàɣà  zàkí  [ná  bà / sê]
1Sg  put.Pfv  Z  [Infin  come/go.Ipfv]

‘I made Zaki come/go.’

13.3.3 Possible different-subject verb-verb compounds

Some apparently transitive verb-verb compounds might be analysable as combinations of a transitive verb followed by an intransitive. Verb-verb compounds in Tiefo-N are somewhat opaque, so we do not insist.

Consider the two compounds meaning ‘knock down’ in (178d) and (179a) in §13.1.1 above, repeated here as (193a-b).

(193)   imperfective   perfective   gloss

a.  yɔ̄-dùnù   yɔ̀-bà-dùnù   ‘knock down’

b.  gbày-dùrù   gbà-rà-dùrù   ‘knock down, cause to fall’

In (193a) the initial is  yɔ̄|yɔ̀-bà, attested as a simple transitive in the sense ‘(blacksmith) forge (blade)’. This denotes the act of placing the blade on an anvil and striking it with a hammer or mallet. The common denominator with ‘knock down’ is the act of striking hard. In (193b) the initial is obscure, though vaguely similar in form and meaning to  gbà|gbà  ‘split (wood); shatter’. The finals in (193a) and (193b) are slightly distinct in form, but might have a common origin. Semantically, ‘knock down’ would make sense if decomposed into ‘X hit Y’ and ‘Y fall’. If we analyse them synchronically in this way, (193a) above would give rise to examples formatted as in (194a-b).
a. \[ \text{ŋ́ yɔ̀-bà dünù zàkì} \]  
\[ 1\text{Sg strike.Pfv fall Z} \]
‘I knocked Zaki down.’

b. \[ yɔ̄ dünù zàkì \]
\[ \text{strike.Ipfv fall.Ipfv Z} \]
‘Knock Zaki down!’

That this may be correct historically is suggested by the possible Tiefo-D cognate verb \( d\text{rü}/d\text{ró}/d\text{rë} \) ‘drip’ (W98: 155 \textit{tropfen}). However, the current Tiefo-N verb for ‘fall’ is \( sōj\text{ägå} \), cf. Noumoudara dialect “suwa” (W98: 224 s.v. Tiefo-D “disô” \textit{fallen}).

### 13.4 Temporal adverbial clauses

#### 13.4.1 ‘While’ background clauses

An eventuality (process, state) that serves as temporal background of a foregrounded event is expressed by an adverbial clause beginning with \( jà-sí-ŋà \) ‘when?’, which also occurs in interrogatives (§11.2.2.4). Whether the subjects of the two clauses are coindexed does not matter. In (195a) the adverbial clause is a past progressive (§9.3.3).

(195) a. \[ zàkì yì-rà \]
\[ \text{Zaki enter-Pfv} \]
\[ jà-sí-ŋà \ ŋ̣ tì \ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ jō\text{lâ} \]
\[ \text{when? 1Sg Past Prog sleep.Ipfv} \]
‘Zaki came in while I was sleeping.’

b. \[ zàkì bì yì-rà \]
\[ \text{Zaki Fut enter-Pfv} \]
\[ jà-sí-ŋà \ ŋ̣ \ wɔ̀ɣɔ̀ jō\text{lâ} \]
\[ \text{when? 1Sg Prog sleep.Ipfv} \]
‘Zaki will come in while I am (=will be) sleeping.’

#### 13.4.2 Imperfective complement of perception verbs

A simple imperfective main clause may function as complement of a higher ‘see’ verb (196a). With ‘hear’, a compound nominal is preferred as the complement (196b).
13.5 Purposive clauses

A matrix-clause motion verb (‘go’, ‘come’, etc.) may combine with a clausal complement expressing the purpose of the motion event. The motion verb is repeated in echo-like infinitival form (nà plus imperfective stem, §3.1.4), followed by a clause containing another verb in its imperfective stem (plus any relevant complements) expressing the purpose.

(197) a. ñ́ bà nà bā [è së [è sëé̃]]
1Sg come.Pfv around.here [Infín come.Ipfv [do.Ipfv [Pref work(n)]]]
‘I have come here in order to work (“do work”).’

b. ɗà kí fà wàgàdùgù
Z go.Stat O [nà së [è sëé̃]]
[Infín go.Ipfv [look.for.Ipfv [Pref work(n)]]]
‘Zaki has gone to Ouagadougou in order to look for work.’

For another example of infinitival echoing of a motion verb, see (80) in §7.1.2, where however the purposive complement is nominal rather than clausal.

13.6 Conditional construction

nì ‘if’ defines a clause as the antecedent in a conditional. It is immediately followed by a subject NP or by a pronominal-subject enclitic. The pronominal paradigm is (198).
13.6.1 Hypothetical (future) conditional

In the main conditional construction, referring to hypothetical nonpast events, the antecedent is in the perfective and the consequent is in the future.

(199) a. [anziŋ̀sugà] [àŋ̀bídɔ̀nɔ̀la]
    [if 2Sg fall.Pfv] [Fut 2Sg Fut injure.Pfv]
    ‘If you-Sg fall, you’ll be hurt.’

b. [nizàkìsugà] [kàbídɔ̀nɔ̀la]
    [if Z fall.Pfv] [3Sg Fut injure.Pfv]
    ‘If Zaki falls, he’ll be hurt.’

13.6.2 Counterfactual

If the antecedent event (and therefore, implicitly, the consequent) failed to take place in the past, the construction is counterfactual. The past morpheme ti is added to both antecedent and consequent, pushing the temporal reference point to a time in the past. Future bì appears in L-toned form (tì bì) in the consequent.

(200) jáná [nìŋ̀tìsugà][c5ŋ5ți̯würí]
    yesterday [if 2Sg Past fall.Pfv [[hole Dem] in]]
    [ŋ̀tìbìwā]
    [2Sg Past Fut die.Pfv]
    ‘If you had fallen into this hole yesterday, you would have died.’
13.6.3 ‘Even if’

The particle hàlí ‘even’ occurs at the beginning of the antecedent, replacing ní ‘if’.

(201) hàlí ŋ̀-bló bà,
même rain(n) come.Pfv,
á ŋ́ bì sà [à fïyârâ]
Fut 1Sg Fut go.Pfv [Pref field]
‘Even if it rains (tomorrow), I’ll go to the fields.’

13.7 ‘That’ complementizers with ‘know’, ‘see’, ‘hear’, and ‘say’ (tá, dè)

With ‘know (that)’ and ‘see (that)’, the nonquotative complementizer tá ‘that’ occurs at the beginning of the subordinated clause, which otherwise has main-clause form.

(202) a. [ŋ́ kɔ̀ⁿ] [tá ŋ̀ gō mā]
[1Sg know.Stat] [that 2Sg be there.Def]
‘I know that you-Sg are present.’

b. [ŋ́ kɔ̀ⁿ] [tá zàkí gō mā]
[1Sg know.Stat] [that Z be there.Def]
‘I know that Zaki is present.’

c. [ŋ́ kɔ̀ⁿ] [tá zàkí kā sē-ʔ]
[1Sg know.Stat] [that Z PfvNeg go.Ipfv-Neg]
‘I know that Zaki didn’t go.’

d. ŋ́ tì kàá kɔ̀ⁿ = yⁿ [tá ŋ̀ gō sàmìyâràⁿ]
1Sg Past PfvNeg know=3SgE [that 2Sg be Bobo.Dioulasso]
‘I didn’t know that you-Sg were in Bobo.’

e. ŋ́ ŋə [tá [à wàtîrî] fyê]
1Sg see.Pfv [that [Pref vehicle] go.Stat
‘I see (=have seen) that the vehicle has left.’

With ‘hear (that)’, the complementizer is dè ‘that’.
The generalization is that dè ‘that’ frames reported speech, while tá frames unspoken but cognitively articulated propositional knowledge.
14 Anaphora

This chapter deals with anaphoric elements that require coindexation with a specific antecedent NP. These are reflexive, reciprocal, and logophoric. The chapter does not cover ordinary third person pronominals.

In Tiefo-N, reflexives and reciprocals are closely related in form.

14.1 Reflexive

A reflexive object is expressed by a pronominally possessed form of the noun-like element $\text{myâ}^n$. The paradigm is (204).

(204)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1Sg</th>
<th>1Pl</th>
<th>2Sg</th>
<th>2Pl</th>
<th>3Sg</th>
<th>3Pl</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{ŋ̀ myâ}^n$</td>
<td>$\text{è myâ}^a$</td>
<td>$\text{ŋ̀ myâ}^a$</td>
<td>$\text{nā myâ}^a$</td>
<td>$\text{ŋ̀ myâ}^a$</td>
<td>$\text{ò myâ}^a$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples are in (205). Plural-subject examples are here translated as reflexives but they can also be reciprocals (see the following section).

(205)  

a. $\text{zàkí kpà [ŋ̀ myâ}^a]$  
   Z hit.Pfv [3Sg Refl]  
   ‘Zaki hit/killed himself.’

b. $[\text{ò sisàfà kpà [ò myâ}^a]$  
   [Pref young.man] hit.Pfv [3Pl Refl]  
   ‘The young men killed themselves.’

c. $\text{è bì kpà [è myâ}^a]$  
   1Pl Fut hit.Pfv [1Pl Refl]  
   ‘We will kill ourselves.’
14.2 Reciprocal

The same reflexive forms can also function as reciprocals. While singular subjects can only have reflexive objects, plural subjects can have either reflexive or reciprocal objects. The resulting ambiguity is not serious in most contexts, where reciprocal readings are usual.

(206) a. ná-m-yó→ kpà [ò myá“]
    child-Pl hit.Pfv [Pref Recip]
    ‘The children hit each other (=fought).’

    b. dídí é ní [è myá“]
    last.year 1Pl see.Pfv [1Pl Recip]
    ‘We saw each other last year.’

14.3 Third-person logophoric

The independent third person pronouns bô (3Sg) and bòó (3Pl), when they occur (instead of the usual third-person proclitic pronominals) in subject position, normally have logophoric interpretations if the clause in question is quoted. In a logophoric relationship, the ascribed author of the quotation is coindexed with the third-person subject pronoun. In other words, the original utterance had a 1Sg or 1Pl pronominal that is converted into a quoted logophoric third person.

This is only the case when the ascribed author is a third party, not the current speaker or addressee. We therefore get an independent third person pronoun in logophoric subject function in (207a-b), but not in (207c). An independent third person pronoun may also be used in lower-clause object function (207d), though we not sure how systematically.

(207) a. zàkí já [(dè) bó bí bà]
    Z say.Pfv [(that) 3Sg Fut come.Pfv]
    ‘Zaki said that he, (=Zaki) will come.’

    b. ná-my-ó→ já [bòó bí bà]
    child-Pl say.Pfv [3Pl Fut come.Pfv]
    ‘The children, said that they, (=the children) will come.’

    c. ulary já [ù bí bà]
    1Sg say.Pfv [1Sg Fut come.Pfv]
    ‘I said that I will come.’
Of course ordinary third person subject pronouns are used in quotations where the subject is not coindexed to the ascribed author (208a-b). The occurrence of a proclitic rather than independent third-person subject pronominal in (208b) tells the listener that the referent of this pronominal is not the same as that of the author (Zaki).

(208)  

a. 1Sg say.Pfv [3Sg Fut come.Pfv]

‘I said that he/she will come.’

b. Z say.Pfv [3Sg Fut come.Pfv]

‘Zaki said that he/she (=someone else) will come.’
15 Discourse markers and greetings

15.1 Discourse markers

15.1.1 Topicalization (kɔ̀ní)

kɔ̀ní (as in Jula) follows a preclausal topicalized constituent. If this constituent is pronominal, it takes independent proninal form: nj kɔ̀ní ‘as for me, …’, zàkí kɔ̀ní ‘as for Zaki, …’.

15.1.2 ‘X too’ (gó)

gó ‘also, too’ occurs phrase-finally (209a-b). It is distinguished tonally from gō ‘be’ (§10.2.1). In (209a-b), the subject is expressed by an independent (not proclitic) pronoun, indicating that the subject is the focus.

(209)  a. njí bà gô
      1Sg come.Pfv also
      ‘I too have come.’

      b. njí bì sà gô
      1Sg be go.Pfv also
      ‘I too will go.’

15.1.3 ‘Self’ (yèrè)

yèrè ‘self’ follows the relevant NP or independent pronoun. The sense is that X rather than some other entity will fulfill the predicate.

(210)  a. [njí yèrè] bì sà
      [1Sg self] Fut go.Pfv
      ‘I myself will go.’

      a. [zàkí yèrè] bì sà
      [Z self] Fut go.Pfv
      ‘Zaki himself will go.’
15.1.4 ‘Even’ (hàlí)

hàlí ‘even’ (the Tiefo-N representative of a widespread regional form) can precede an NP (including an independent pronoun). In (211) the ‘even’ phrase functions as a preclausal topic. The presupposition is that others can do the work more easily.

(211) [hàlí ní] náyáⁿ dē pàr³ⁿ = [ŷ sə̀eⁿ]  
[even 1Sg] 1Sg.Prog do.Ipfv be.able [Pref work(n)]  
‘Even I can do this work.’ (=ŷ from ë, náyáⁿ variant of ë wɔ́yɔ́)

15.1.5 ‘Only’ (mìëⁿ)

This is expressed by adding mìëⁿ after the relevant constituent. It may combine with the focus particle (§11.1) as mìëⁿ nè (212a). The sense is that no other individual has performed the indicated action.

(212) a. [ní mìëⁿ nè] bà  
[1Sg only Foc] come.Pfv  
‘Only I have come.’

b. zàkí dí [à fìyáⁿ] mìëⁿ  
Z eat.Ipfv [Pref toad] only  
‘Zaki only eats toads.’

15.1.6 ‘But’ (absent)

In clause sequences like (213) where there is an adversarial relationship between the content of the two clauses, no overt ‘but’ particle is used. Other languages of the zone generally use an adaptation of French mais ‘but’.

(213) [kà kúlë] [kà māⁿ yé]  
[3Sg crawl.Ipfv] [3Sg IpfvNeg walk.Ipfv]  
‘It (=baby) can crawl, (but) it can’t walk.’
15.2 Greetings

The morning greeting is (214a), ending with a vocative naming the addressee. The interlocutor replies with the same formula, changing only the personal name of the addressee. The sequence that follows this initial exchange is (214b-d).

(214) a. bàsáàⁿ làmíni
good.morning L
‘Good morning Lamine!’ (cf. sùgáⁿ ‘morning’)

b. mì yígà→
2Sg get.up.Pfv
‘You-Sg have arisen.’ (< yígà )

c. ñ́ yígà, ñ́ nà kúàⁿ
1Sg get.up.Pfv 1Sg see.Pfv today
‘I have arisen, I have seen (=reached) today.’

d. dyäʔáⁿ ŋáⁿ sùgúná
fire give.Pfv tomorrow
‘May fire (=God) give (us) tomorrow!’
References cited


Hantgan, Abbie. 2013ms. Tiefo dictionary. [manuscript December 2013].

Hantgan, Abbie. 2014ms. A grammar of Tiefo. [manuscript January 2014].


Miehe, Gudrun, Brigitte Reineke & Kerstin Winkelmann (eds.). 2012. Noun class systems in Gur languages, tome 1, Southwestern Gur languages (without Gurunsi); tome 2, North central Gur languages. Cologne: Köppe.


### Abbreviations and symbols

#### Abbreviations

- **A**: A-class of nouns (in e.g. 3SgA)
- **Adj**: adjective
- **ATR**: advanced tongue root (vowel feature)
- **C**: consonant (in formulae like CvCv)
- **Def**: definite
- **Dem**: demonstrative
- **E**: E-class of nouns (in e.g. 3SgE)
- **Excl**: exclusive (first person)
- **Foc**: focus
- **Fut**: future
- **H**: high (tone)
- **Hum**: human
- **Ipfv**: imperfective
- **Imprt**: imperative
- **Incl**: inclusive (first person)
- **Infin**: infinitive
- **L**: a) low (tone), b) any sonorant (in formulae like CvL)
- **N**: a) noun (in e.g. “N-Adj”), b) nasal consonant (in formulae like CvN)
- (n): noun, in interlinear glosses like ‘work(n)’
- **Neg**: negative
- **Nom**: nominalizer
- **NP**: noun phrase
- **Num**: numeral
- **O**: a) object (in e.g. “SVO”), b) O-class of nouns (in e.g. 3SgO)
- **Obj**: object
- **Pfv**: perfective
- **Pl**: plural
- **Poss**: possessive, possessor
- **PP**: postpositional phrase
- **Prog**: progressive
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pron</th>
<th>pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Proh</td>
<td>prohibitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recip</td>
<td>reciprocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refl</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>subject (in e.g. SVO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sg</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stat</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>verb (in e.g. “SVO”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>vowel (in formulae like “CvCv”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v)</td>
<td>verb, in interlinear glosses like ‘fight(v)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP</td>
<td>verb phrase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Symbols**

* reconstructed
# ungrammatical, unacceptable, unattested
ā, à, â, ā, ē tones on vowels (or syllables)
<…> contour tones on one syllable, e.g. <HL> or <LH>
/…/ a) lexical tone melody, e.g. /LH/, /H/
b) underlying or lexical representation
{…} a) tone overlay, e.g. {HL}, {H}, {L}
b) enclosing any set, e.g. {u a i}
[…] a) phonetic (IPA) representation, e.g. [ɓː]; or phrasal grouping
b) syntactic brackets
きっと downstep
= clitic boundary
→ prolongtion
Indices

1. selected morphemes

à  
marker of A-class before noun, §3.1.1.2

ba  
a) bà, ‘come’, §8.3
b) -bà, perfective suffix, §8.6.3.1

baa  
a) bàá, prohibitive, §9.5.2
b) bàá, in negative hortative, §9.6.2

bayá  
a) bayá, in ‘want’ construction, §10.3.2
b) bayá, benefactive, §7.1.2

bááá  
in ‘have’ construction, §10.2.5.1

bé  
‘come’ (imperfective only), §8.3

béé  
discourse-definite ‘that’, §5.4.2

bi  
a) bí ~ bí, future, §9.4.1
b) bí ~ bí, hortative, §9.6.1

bíè ~ byé  
‘what?’, §11.2.2.2

bô  
3Sg independent and logophoric pronoun, §3.2.1, §14.3

bòó  
3Pl independent and logophoric pronoun, §3.2.1, §14.3

dë  
a) dë, ‘happen’ (suppletive perfective), §8.7
b) dë, ‘become’, §10.2.3
c) dë, ‘that’ complementizer after ‘hear’ and ‘say’, §13.7
d) dë = ŷ, ‘X belongs to Y’ construction, §10.2.5.2

dí  
possessive, §5.5

  tone-dropping after, §2.7.3.4

díì  
a certain’ (specific indefinite), 5.7

dò  
a) dó, ‘X belongs to Y’ construction, §10.2.5.2
b) dò, in instrument relatives, §12.1.1.2
c) -dó, ordinal suffix, §3.4.5

dûyô  
‘possession’, (74) in §5.5
è  
marker of E-class before noun, §3.1.1.3

fá“  
‘here’, §5.4.3
fyé  
‘be gone’ (stative), §10.3.1

go  
a) gô, ‘be’, §10.2.1

  in ‘have’ construction, §10.2.5.1
  in ‘want’ construction, §10.3.2
b) gô, ‘too, also’, §15.1.2
jè  ‘how many?’, §11.2.2.6
hàlí  ‘even’, §15.1.4
jè  ‘was’, past of gō, §10.2.1, §10.2.5.1-2
ja  a) jà, ‘happen’ (suppletive imperfective), §8.7
    in the sense ‘become’ (suppletive imperfective), §10.2.3
b) jà, ‘say’ (suppletive perfective positive), §10.1.6
c) part of content interrogatives
   bē-já, ‘why?’, §11.2.2.2
   já-tāy, ‘where?’, §11.2.2.3
   jā-sí-ŋá, ‘when?’, §11.2.2.4
jāyā\jàyā  ‘put’, §8.4
    in periphrastic causatives, §13.3.2
jā-sí(-ŋá)  ‘when?’, §11.2.2.4
    in temporal adverbial clause, §13.4.1
já-tāy  ‘where?’, §11.2.2.3
järà  ‘who?’, §11.2.2.1
jì  ‘know’, §10.3.3.2
jìnàʕá  ‘which?’, §11.2.2.7
ka  a) kà ~ káá, 3Sg perfective negative, §9.1.2
    b) kà máⁿ, 3Sg imperfective negative, §9.2.2
káá  (see kà)
kɔ̀ⁿ  ‘know’, §10.3.3.1
    complement clause, §13.7
la  a) -là , perfective suffix on verb, §8.6.1.1
    b) là\le, common final syllable in trisyllabic verbs, (92b) in §8.5.1
le  a) lè ~ nè, focus particle, §11.1
    b) le, see là\lle under “la (b)” above
ma  a) -mà, perfective suffix for some verbs, §8.6.3.1
    b) mā, ‘there (discourse-definite)’, §5.4.3, §10.2.1
maⁿ  a) māⁿ, imperfective negative, §9.2.2
    b) māⁿ, optional reduction of máyāⁿ, progressive/future negative, §10.2.1
màⁿká  ‘how?’, §11.2.2.5
mǐⁿ  ‘only’, §15.1.5
myāⁿ  reflexive and reciprocal, §14.1-2
na  a) nà, ‘and’, ‘with’, §6.1, §7.2.1
    part of ‘bring’ and ‘take (convey)’, §7.2.2
    in causatives of ‘come’ and ‘go’, §13.3.2
b) -nà, perfective suffix on verb, §8.6.1.2
    c) nā, infinitive, preceding verb or VP, §3.1.4
ŋ53ⁿ  demonstrative ‘this/that’, §5.4.1
\( p^{5^o} \) ‘person’, §3.1.5
\( ò \) marker of O-class before noun, §3.1.1.1
\( p\check{\text{r}}^{4^o} \sim p\check{\text{y}}^{4^o} \) ‘be able to, can’, §13.2.1
-\( râ \) perfective suffix on verb, §8.6.1.1
-\( ro \) plural suffix allomorph on nouns, (30) in §3.1.2

\( s\text{à} \) ‘go’ (perfective), §8.5.2

\( s\text{è} \) a) \( s\check{\text{è}} \) ‘go’ (imperfective), §8.5.2
    b) \( s\check{\text{è}} \), ‘where?’, §11.2.2.3

\( t\text{à} \) a) \( t\check{\text{à}} \), ‘or’, §6.2
    b) \( t\check{\text{à}} \), ‘that complementizer after ‘know’ and ‘see’, §13.7

\( t\check{\text{è}} = ? \) ‘it isn’t X’, §10.2.4
\( t\text{î} \) past, §9.3.3, §13.6.2
\( t\text{o}^{5^o} \) locative postposition, §7.3.1

\( w\text{à} \) polar interrogative, §11.2.1
    in disjunctions, §6.2

\( w\text{i} \) a) \( -w\text{i} \), deverbal agentive, §3.1.3
    compounds, §4.2.3
    b) \( -w\text{i} \), ‘owner’, in compounds, §4.2.2

\( w\text{ɔ\text{y}ɔ} \) a) \( w\text{ɔ\text{y}ɔ} \), progressive positive, §9.3.1
    b) \( w\text{ɔ\text{y}ɔ} \sim w\text{ɔ\text{y}ɔ} \), 3Pl perfective negative, §9.1.2
    c) \( w\text{ɔ\text{y}ɔ m}\check{\text{à}}^{5^o} \), 3Pl imperfective negative, §9.2.2

\( w\text{ùrì} \) locative postposition, §7.3.1

\( y\text{áyá} \) ‘prevent’, §13.2.2.3

\( =\check{\text{y}} \) ‘it is X’, §10.2.4

\( y\text{èrè} \) ‘self’, §15.1.3

\(-yo\rightarrow \) plural suffix allomorph on nouns, (31) in §3.1.2

2. grammatical terms

ablaut, in verb stems, §2.7.2
adjective, §3.3
    noun-adjective syntax, §5.3
    ordinal, §3.4.5
    adjectival predicate, §10.1.2.3
adposition, chapter 7
adverb (see also “postposition”)
    demonstrative, §5.4.3
    focalized, §11.1.3
adverbial clause
  temporal, §13.4.1-2
  manner, §11.2.2.5 (‘how?’)
agentive, §3.1.3
  compounds, §4.2.3
alienability
  body parts in A-class, §3.1.1.2
  ‘also’, §15.1.2
ambi-valent verb, §10.1.4
anaphora, chapter 14
aspect, §8.1, §9.1-3, §10.1.2-2
ATR, §2.2.2
  in vocalic contractions, §3.2.2, §5.2
bahuvrihi, §4.3
‘be’
  locative/existential, §10.2.1
  copula, §12.2.2
  ‘it is X’ (copula, identificational), §0.2.4
  ‘be (adjective)’, §10.1.2.3
‘become’
  ‘become (something)’, §10.2.3
  ‘become (adjective)’, §10.1.2.3
benefactive, §7.1.2
‘bring’, §7.2.2
‘can, be able to’, §13.2.1
causative, §13.3.2
‘child’, §4.4
  diminutives, §4.4
classes (of nonhuman nouns), §3.1.1
cliticization
  proclitic pronouns, §3.2.1
  enclitic pronouns (objects), §3.2.2
  clause-final negative enclitic, chapter 9 introduction
clusters (consonantal), §2.3
‘come’, §8.3
comitative, §7.2
complementizer (‘that’), §13.7
compounds
  nominal, §4.1-2
  bahuvrihi, §4.3
diminutives, §4.4
conjunction of NPs, §6.1
conditionals, §13.6
consonants, §2.1
contraction of vowels
  with verb plus object enclitic, §3.2.2
  with vocalic prefix (class marker), §5.2
  after deletion of liquid, §2.6.5
coordination, chapter 6 (see also “conjunction,” “disjunction”)
copula, §10.2.2
counterfactual, §13.6.2
dative, §7.1.1
definiteness
  discourse-definite ‘that’, §5.4.2
  specific indefinite, §5.7
demonstrative, §5.4.1-2
  adverb, §5.4.3
denasalization, §3.1.2 (plurals of nouns)
diminutive noun, §4.4
discourse markers, §15.1.1-6
disjunction (‘or’), §6.2
ditransitive verb combinations, §10.1.5
  indirect object, §7.1.1
‘do’, §8.5.2
  in agentive compounds, §4.2.3
‘even’, §15.1.4
  ‘even if’, §13.6.3
exclusive (first person), §3.2.1
existence, §10.2.1
factive complement clause, §13.7
floating tones
  imperfective negative, §9.2.2
focalization, chapter 11
future, §9.4.1
  conditional, §13.6.1
$g$, alternations
  with $g$ and $y$, §2.6.7
‘give’, §10.1.5
glottal stop, §2.1
‘go’, §8.5.2
stative, §10.3.1

greetings, §15.2

habitual (preent), §9.2.1

‘happen’, §8.7

‘have’, §10.2.5.1

HM#(H)-to-HH#+(‘H), §2.7.3.2

hortative, §9.6

imperative, §9.5.1

imperfective, §9.2

in complements, §13.4.2

inalienable, §3.1.1.2

inchoative verb (‘become ADJ’), §3.3, §10.1.2.3

inclusive (first person), §3.2.1

infinitive, §3.1.4

instrumental, §7.2.1

interrogatives, §11.2

intonation (see “prolongation”)

‘it is’, §10.2.4

‘know’, §10.3.3.1-2

with clausal complement, §13.7

\l\_ alternations

with \r\_; §2.6.6

labile verb, §10.1.4

labial velar, §2.1

from velar plus \w\_; §2.6.4

LH#H-to-LL#H, §2.7.3.1

LH#L-to-LL#H, §2.7.3.1

<\LH>->to-H, §2.7.3.3

liquid (\r\_, \l\_), §2.1

intervocalic deletion, §2.6.5

\r/\l alternation, §2.6.6

location

‘be (somewhere)’, §10.2.1

locative postposition, §7.3.1

logophoric, §14.3

manner adverb, ‘how?’, §11.2.2.5

middle (voice of verb), §10.1.4

modal (see “imperative,” “hortative”)

motion verb

ambi-valent, §10.1.4
repetition (echoing), (80) in §7.1.2, (197a-b) in §13.5
in ‘bring’ and ‘take (convey)’, §7.2.2
multi-verb constructions, chapter 13

n, alternations
with r, §2.6.8

nasalization
nasal vowels, §2.2.3
vowel nasalization as concomitant of n/r alternation, §2.6.8
denasalization in plural nouns, §3.1.2

negation, chapter 9
prohibitive, §9.5.2
‘not be’, §10.2.1-2, §10.2.4
final glottal stop, §2.1

noun, §3.1
tones, §2.7.1
noun classes, §3.1.1

NP (noun phrase), chapter 5

numeral, §3.4
object, §10.1.3-5
focalized, §11.1.2
pronominal object enclitics, §3.2.2
‘only’, §15.1.5

order
order of constituents in clauses, §10.1.1
order of elements within NP, §5.1

ordinal, §3.4.5
‘owner of X’, §4.2.2

past
‘was’, §10.2.1
‘had’, §10.2.5.1
past stative, §10.1.2.2
past progressive, §9.3.3

perception verb
complements of, §13.4.2

perfective, §9.1

person (see “pronouns”)
plural of nouns, §3.1.2
polarity (see “negation”)
polar interrogative, §11.2.1

possession, §5.5
possessive-type compounds, §4.2
possessive predicate, §10.2.5.1-2
tones, §2.7.3.4
possessor relative, §12.1.3
postposition, chapter 7
  relativization on complement, §12.1.4
preposition, §7.2
progressive, §9.3
  past progressive, §9.3.3
prohibitive, §9.5.2
prolongation (terminal)
  productive plural of nouns, §3.1.2
  with quantifiers, §5.6
pronouns, §3.2
  pronominal possessors, §4.3.1.2
  reflexive, §14.1
purposive
  postposition, §7.4
  clause, §13.5
quantification, §5.6
quotation
  ‘say’ verb, §10.1.6
  quotative complement, §13.7
r, alternations
  with l, §2.6.6
  with n, §2.6.8
reciprocal, §14.2
reflexive, §14.1
relative clauses, chapter 12
  ‘say’, §10.1.6
schwa, §2.6.2
specific indefinite, §5.7
stance verbs
  stative forms of, §10.1.2.2
stative, §10.1.2.2, §10.3
subject, §10.1
  focalized, §11.1.1
  same-subject clause, §13.2
  different-subject clause, §13.3.1
suppletion
verbs, §8.7 (‘happen’), §10.1.6 (‘say’)
for ‘10’ in odd-numbered decimal terms (‘30’ to ‘90’), §3.4.3
syllables, §2.3
syncope, §2.6.3
‘too’, §15.1.2
tone, §2.5, §2.7
tone sandhi, §2.7.3
tone-dropping in possessives, §2.7.3.4
distinguishing perfective from imperfective, §8.4
topic, §15.1.1
transitivity, §10.1
valency of verb, §10.1
ambi-valent verb, §10.1.4
verb
valency, §10.1
morphology, chapter 8
verb phrase syntax, chapter 9
ablaut, §2.7.2
deverbal derivation
agentives, §3.1.3
vowel, §2.2 (see also “contraction”)
reduction to schwa, §2.6.2
Syncope, §2.6.3
vocalic ablaut in verbal morphology, §8.5
vocalic prefix (noun-class marker), §5.2
VP (verb phrase)
infiniitival complements, §13.2.2.1, §13.5
vv-Contract (see “contraction”)
‘want’, §10.3.2
‘with’, §7.2